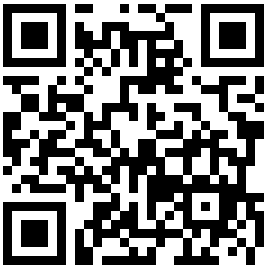
This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

https://books.google.com



AC
5
U58

CORNELL UNIVERSITY LIBRARY
3 1924 127 756 421

**EM 545**
EDUCATION MANUAL

# SPOKEN HINDUSTANI

## BASIC COURSE

## UNITS 13-30

**Selected and Prepared by the Editorial Staff, United States Armed Forces Institute**
***For the Use of Personnel of* ARMY—NAVY—MARINE CORPS—COAST GUARD**

Digitized by Google

John M. Echols

Digitized by Google

EDUCATION MANUAL EM 545

# *Spoken Hindustani*

*BASIC COURSE • UNITS 13–30*

*by Henry M. Hoenigswald*

PUBLISHED FOR THE UNITED STATES ARMED FORCES
BY THE LINGUISTIC SOCIETY OF AMERICA AND THE INTENSIVE LANGUAGE PROGRAM
AMERICAN COUNCIL OF LEARNED SOCIETIES

Digitized by Google

HC
5
U58
EM545

Copyright, 1945,
By Linguistic Society of America

No part of the material covered by this copyright may be produced in any form without written permission of the publishers.

The material presented herewith is for use as an aid in instruction in certain educational activities of the armed forces. The statements and opinions contained are those of the author. This book is not available for sale by the Superintendent of Documents nor may it be sold or distributed in this form on the civilian market.

WAR DEPARTMENT
Washington 25, D. C., 10 June 1945
[A. G. 300.7 (10 June 45).]

(Additional copies should be requisitioned from USAFI, Madison 3, Wisconsin, or nearest Overseas Branch)

EDUCATIONAL SERVICES SECTION, STANDARDS AND CURRICULUM DIVISION, TRAINING, BUREAU OF NAVAL PERSONNEL,
NAVY DEPARTMENT,
Washington 25, D. C.

Copies for Navy personnel should be requisitioned from Educational Services Section.

EDUCATION SECTION, WELFARE DIVISION, SPECIAL SERVICES BRANCH,
UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS,
Washington 25, D. C.

Distributed to Marine Corps personnel by Special Services Branch. Additional copies, or information, may be obtained from unit Special Services Officers.

TRAINING DIVISION, OFFICE OF PERSONNEL,
COAST GUARD HEADQUARTERS,
Washington 25, D. C.

Copies for Coast Guard personnel should be requisitioned from The Commandant (PT), U. S. Coast Guard Headquarters, Washington 25, D. C.

Digitized by Google

# CONTENTS

## PART THREE


| UNIT | | Page |
|---|---|---|
| 13. | DINING OUT. Numbers ending in *-uãã* '-th'. *karnaa* and *hoonaa*. Direct Object. "Time". | 171 |
| 14. | A STAY IN INDIA. Duration in the past. Past tense. *samjhaa*, *rahaa* (*rahũũ*), *aaiaa*, *gaiaa*, *huuaa*. List of neuter verbs. *na-*. *huuaa* 'ago'. Tense in "indirect discourse". | 188 |
| 15. | ON THE FARM. Numbers. *gaaee*, *gaaõõ*. *-nee-* *uaalaa*. *paidaa*. Transitive verbs. Past tense forms in *-iiaa*. *-nee*. *apnaa* with the past tense. | 202 |
| 16. | AN UNEXPECTED GUEST. Numbers. Oblique of question pronoun. Relative pronoun. Past tense form plus verb "to be". *huuaa* after a participle. | 216 |
| 17. | IN THE STORE. Numbers. Pronoun forms in *-ee*, *-(h)ẽẽ*. "If". Additional remarks on particles; subtraction. *iee . . . kee*. | 232 |
| 18. | REVIEW. | 245 |


## PART FOUR


| UNIT | | Page |
|---|---|---|
| 19. | TEA. Numbers. *-saa*. Sets beginning with *i-*, *u-*, *k-*, *j-*. *hoonaa*, *paRnaa* 'to have to'. | 251 |
| 20. | CITIES OF INDIA. Numbers. Irregular nouns and adjectives in *-aa*. *naaoo*. "The same"; *-hii*. | 266 |
| 21. | GETTING INTO TROUBLE. Numbers. Nouns and adjectives in *-ãã*. Infinitives in the oblique case before *lagnaa* and *deenaa*. | 279 |
| 22. | STORY TELLING. Numbers. Various expressions for "you". *-kar*. *jaaiaa karnaa*. Compound verbs. | 292 |
| 23. | THE PEOPLE OF INDIA. Passive. "similar to . . ., much like . . .". Manner. | 307 |
| 24. | REVIEW. | 319 |




Digitized by Google

## PART FIVE


| UNIT | | Page |
|---|---|---|
| **25.** | COMMUNICATIONS. Oblique singular in expressions for measures. Command forms. | 325 |
| **26.** | AFTER THE BATTLE. Combinations of nouns. Verb sets. More about particles. | 337 |
| **27.** | BUILDING. Months. Additional numbers and measures. Infinitive constructions. Subjunctive followed by *too*. | 352 |
| **28.** | GAMES. Doubling. Participle expressions in *-(t)ee*. Past participles followed by *hoonaa*. | 366 |
| **29.** | WAR. Vocative. *čukaa* following a verb stem. | 380 |
| **30.** | REVIEW. | 392 |


## APPENDIX


| | Page |
|---|---|
| A. GLOSSARY. | 398 |
| B. LIST OF NAMES. | 414 |
| C. IRREGULAR VERB FORMS. | 417 |
| D. THE MAKE-UP OF WORDS. | 417 |
| E. ENGLISH-HINDUSTANI REMINDER LIST. | 418 |




Digitized by Google

# DINING OUT

If you have a Guide, the procedure from now on will be exactly as before. The records, however, supply only the material for the first twelve Units. If you have no Guide, you will have to follow the plan of having one of the group who is particularly good in his work play the Guide's role in the *Basic Sentences* and the *Listening In*.

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

At Mr. Aziz' house.

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| Aziz: | |
| Will you be free tonight? | *kiaa aaj raat-mẽẽ aap-koo uaḳt hai?* |
| Paul: | |
| to me | *mujhee.* |
| I have a furlough, but I haven't any money. | *mujhee čhuTTii hai. leekin meeree paas paisaa nahĩĩ.* |
| Aziz: | |
| Why, that doesn't matter, | *iee too kuč̌h baat nahĩĩ,* |
| the guest | *mehʿmaan.* |
| You're my guest. | *tum meeree mehʿmaan hoo.* |
| to invite me | *meerii daauaṭ karnaa.* |
| Some day you'll invite me. | *phir kabhii tum meerii daauat karoo-gee.* |



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| Paul: | |
| Then I'll be glad to go. | *too mãĩ xušii-see jaaũũ-gaa.* |
| to finish | *xatam karnaa.* |
| When do you finish work? | *tum kab kaam xatam kartee hoo.* |
| Aziz: | |
| plus a half | *saaRhee.* |
| Five-thirty. | *saaRhee pããč bajee.* |
| Paul: | |
| quarter past | *sauaa.* |
| Should I meet you at 6:15 then? | *too kiaa mãĩ tum-koo sauaa čhai bajee milũũ?* |
| Aziz: | |
| 6:15 is a bit late. | *sauaa čhai bajee thooRii deer hai.* |
| quarter to | *paunee.* |
| Is 5:45 all right? | *kiaa paunee čhai bajee Thiik hai?* |
| Paul: | |
| O.K. | *ačchaa;* |
| Where should we go? | *ham kahãã jaeẽẽ.* |
| Aziz: | |
| New York | *nuuiaark.* |
| There's a Hindu restaurant in New York. Let's go there. | *nuuiaark-mẽẽ hindustaanii khaanee-kii dukaan hai. uahãã čalẽẽ.* |
| Paul: | |
| Why, that's an excellent idea! | *iee too bahot ačchaa xiaal hai.* |



Digitized by Google

pair
But I have to buy a pair of shoes first.

*jooRaa.*
*leekin us-kee pahᵉlee, mujh-koo eek jooRaa juutaa xariidnaa čaahiiee.*

Aziz:
your
torn
Why? Are your shoes worn out?

*tumhaaraa,*
*phaTaa.*
*kiõõ. kiaa tumhaaree juutee phaTee hãĩ?*

to have it mended
Then have 'em fixed.

*us-kii marammat karaanaa.*
*too us-kii marammat karaaoo.*

Paul:
But I don't have another pair.

*leekin meeree paas duusraa jooRaa juutaa nahĩĩ.*

Aziz:
number
to wear
What size shoe do you wear?

*nambar,*
*pahennaa.*
*tum, kis nambar-kaa juutaa pahentee hoo.*

Paul:
Seven and a half.

*saaRhee saat.*

Aziz:
I'll bring you a pair of my brother's.
Then I'll come to your room at 5:45.

*mãĩ tum-koo apnee bhaaii-kaa eek jooRaa juutaa laaũũ-gaa.*
*too mãĩ tumhaaree kamree-mẽẽ, paunee čhai bajee aaũũ-gaa.*

In the Restaurant.

Paul:
Where should we sit?

*ham kahãã baiThẽẽ.*



Digitized by Google

Waiter:

| | |
|---|---|
| fourth | *čauthaa,* |
| fifth | *pāācuāā.* |
| Sir, the fourth or fifth table is for you. | *janaab, čauthii iaa pāāčuīī meez, aap-kee liiee hai.* |

Aziz:

| | |
|---|---|
| to begin something | *šuruu karnaa,* |
| Let's go ahead and eat. | *khaanaa šuruu karẽẽ.* |
| How much is it? | *iṣ-kaa, kitnaa daam hai.* |

Waiter:

| | |
|---|---|
| usual | *maamulii,* |
| one-and-half | *DeeRh,* |
| dollar | *Daalar.* |
| The usual price is a dollar and a half but for you it's only a dollar. | *maamulii daam DeeRh Daalar hãī. leekin aap-kee liiee, sirf eek Daalar hai.* |

Paul:

| | |
|---|---|
| How come? | *kiõõ.* |

Waiter:

| | |
|---|---|
| Because you're a soldier. | *sipaahii hoonee-see.* |
| to win | *jiitnaa,* |
| desire | *xuaahiš.* |
| And we all want to do something for the war effort (lit. because all of us have the desire of winning the war). | *kiõõ-kee ham sab-koo laRaaii jiitnee-kii xuaahiš hai.* |



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| Paul: | |
| That's very nice of you. | *bahot ačchaa,* |
| Bring on the food! | *khaanaa laaoo.* |
| Aziz: | |
| the first time | *pahelii dafaa,* |
| you have come | *tum aaee hoo.* |
| Is this the first time you've come here to eat? | *kiaa tum pahelii dafaa iahãã khanee-kee liiee aaee hoo?* |
| Paul: | |
| No. | *jii nahĩĩ.* |
| past | *guzraa,* |
| the month | *mahiinaa,* |
| approximately | *taḳriiban.* |
| Last month a friend of mine and I were here about three times. | *mãĩ aur meeree doost, guzree mahiinee taḳriiban tiin dafaa iahãã thee.* |
| world | *duniiãã.* |
| In my opinion Hindu cooking is the best in the world. | *meeree xiaal-mẽẽ, hindustaanii khaanaa, duniiãã-mẽẽ sab-see ziaadaa mazeedaar hai.* |
| Aziz: | |
| I like it a lot, too. | *mujhee bhii bahot pasand hai.* |
| | * * * |
| Paul: | |
| Who do we pay? | *ham kis-koo paisaa dẽẽ.* |
| Aziz: | |
| cashier | *xazaančii.* |
| The cashier, I think. | *meeraa xiaal hai kee xazaančii-koo.* |



Digitized by Google

Paul:

Should we leave anything for the waiter? *kiaa naukar-kee liiee kuč̃h paisaa čhooRẽẽ?*

Aziz:

poor fellow *bičaaraa*

Why, certainly. The poor fellow works very hard. *zaruur zaruur. bičaaraa bahot kaam kartaa hai.*

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. "THE FIRST, SECOND, . . . FOURTH," ETC.

1. *pããčuĩĩ meez aap-kee liiee hai* 'the fifth table is for you'

Most adjectives in *-ãã* such as *pããčuãã* 'fifth' behave like the other "changing" adjectives in *-aa* (*-ee*, *-ii*) except for the fact that the final vowel is always spoken through the nose (*-ãã*, *-ẽẽ*, *-ĩĩ*). Compare:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *meer*aa *kamraa* | 'my room' | : | *pããčuãã kamraa* | 'the fifth room' |
| *ũũč*ee *ghar-mẽẽ* | 'in a high house' | : | *pããčuẽẽ ghar-mẽẽ* | 'in the fifth house' |
| *pahᵉl*ii *dafaa* | 'for the first time' | : | *pããčuĩĩ dafaa* | 'for the fifth time' |

2. *pahᵉlii dafaa* '(for) the first time'
   *duusraa kamraa* 'the second room'
   *tiisree darjee-mẽẽ* 'in the third class'
   *čauthii iaa pããčuĩĩ meez* 'the fourth or fifth table'



Digitized by Google

Memorize the following pairs:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *eek* | 'one' | *pahᵉlaa* | 'first' |
| *doo* | 'two' | *duusraa* | 'second' |
| *tiin* | 'three' | *tiisraa* | 'third' |
| *čaar* | 'four' | *čauthaa* | 'fourth' |
| *pāāč* | 'five' | *pāāčuāā* | 'fif*th*' |

'sixth' is *chaтaa* or, more often, *chaтuāā*

All the higher numbers form derivatives of this type on the model of *pāāč* 'five' : *pāāčuāā* 'fifth', that is, by adding the ending *-uāā* (*-uēē*, *-uīī*) equivalent to the English "-th" in 'seventh', 'thousandth'. Thus, *saat*uēē *daarjee-par* 'on the seventh floor', *untiisu*iī *saʀak* 'twenty-ninth street'. Note, however, that the numbers in *-aa* from 'eleven' to 'eighteen' change their *-aa* into a simple *-h* before *-uāā* (*-uēē*, *-uīī*). Compare:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *baar*aa *ghanтee* | 'twelve hours' | : | *baar*huēē *ghanтee-mēē* 'in the twelf*th* hour' |
| *soo*laa *dafaa* | 'sixteen times' | : | *soo*lhuīī *dafaa* '(for) the sixteen*th* time' |

Here is the complete list:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *giaarhuāā* | '11th' | *pandrhuāā* | '15th' |
| *baarhuāā* | '12th' | *soolhuāā* | '16th' |
| *teerhuāā* | '13th' | *sattrhuāā* | '17th' |
| *čaudhuāā* | '14th' | *aтhaarhuāā* | '18th' |

(If you have been listening to a Guide who says *baarahᵉ*, *sattrahᵉ* rather than our *baaraa*, *sattraa*, this list of "-th" words will not surprise you too much. In his particular Hindustani, these words are somewhat less irregular, since the *h* appears all the way through: *sattrahᵉ* : *sattrhuāā*. Some people, on the other hand, may use *-h*-less forms throughout, even before the *-uāā*, such as *teeruāā*, *pandruāā*.)



Digitized by Google

Remember also that these numbers themselves are Class A adjectives, that is, they do not change their ending even though it happens to be *-aa* (at least with most speakers). But the *-uãã* or *-huãã* forms, are of course class B adjectives and appear with *-(h)uẽẽ*, *-(h)uĩĩ*. Thus, *soolaa meh$^{e}$maan* 'sixteen guests' vs. *soolhuẽẽ meh$^{e}$maan-see* 'than the 16th guest'.

## B. EXPRESSIONS WITH *HOONAA, KARNAA*

1. *bahot kaam kartii hai* 'she does much work, she works hard'
   *us-koo bahot kaam hai* 'she has much work, she works hard'

   *šoor kartee hãĩ* 'they do noise'
   *šoor hootaa hai* 'there is noise'

   *baatčiit karẽẽ* 'let us make conversation, let us talk'
   *baatčiit hootii hai* 'there is talking going on'

   *ummiid karẽẽ* 'let us "do hope", let us hope'
   *sab loogõõ-koo ummiid hai* 'to all people there is hope, everybody hopes'

   *us-kaa afsoos kartaa hũũ* 'I do the regret of it, I regret it'
   *us-kaa afsoos hai* '(to me) there is regret of it, I regret it'

   *un-koo aaraam karnaa čaahiiee* 'he needs to do a rest, to rest'

Many NOUNS such as *kaam*, *šoor*, *baatčiit*, *ummiid*, *afsoos*, *aaraam* are found in combination with either the verb *karnaa* 'to do' or *hoonaa* 'to become, to be'. Combinations of one and the same noun with *karnaa* on the one hand and with *hoonaa* on the other require, of course, entirely different constructions. If used with *hoonaa*, the noun in question is the subject of the verb, and the person affected is referred to by *-koo* 'to . . . ' : *meerii mãã-koo kuch kaam hai* 'to my mother some work is.' With *karnaa*, the person is the subject of the verb, while the noun in question is considered the goal or effect of the "doing" action: *meerii mãã kaam kartii hai* 'my mother does work'. Note that in the end this and some of the other pairs cited give the same equivalent in English: 'My mother works'. Incidentally, the noun *kaam* in the *karnaa* construction will be referred to as the grammatical OBJECT of the verb *karnaa*, the SUBJECT being *meerii mãã*. (In the *hoonaa*-construction, *kaam* is the subject.)



Digitized by Google

2. a. *iee jagaa ũũčii kiijiiee* 'Please raise this place a bit higher'
*iee jagaa ũũčii hai* 'The place is higher'.

b. *kiaa aap hindustaan pasand kartee hãĩ* 'Do you like India'?
*kisii-koo hauaaii jahaaz pasand hai* 'Some people like an airplane'

*khaanaa šuruu karẽẽ* 'Let's begin to eat'
*sinamaa kab šuruu hootaa hai* 'When does the movie begin'?

*tum kab kaam xatam kartee hoo* 'When do you finish working'?
*baariš xatam hoonee-tak* 'Until the rain ends'

*uoo baat maaluum karũũ-gaa* 'I'll make sure of that matter'
*iee baat mujh-koo maaluum nahĩĩ* 'This matter is unknown to me, I don't know about this matter'

a. ADJECTIVES, too, may be combined with *karnaa* 'to do' and *hoonaa* 'to become, to be'. I can "MAKE a place high(er), raise it" : *mãĩ jagaa ũũčii kartaa hũũ* (talking to a mason or carpenter, for instance), and "a place can BE high" : *iee jagaa ũũčii hai*

b. A number of adjectives are found ONLY in combination with *karnaa* and *hoonaa*. English equivalents of such combinations often do not contain an adjective. But, on going through the above examples, it is easy to see that Hindustani says:

Do you MAKE India "liked"
To some people an airplane IS "liked"
Let's MAKE the eating "incipient" or "started"
When will the movie BE "incipient" or "started"
When do you MAKE the work "finished"
Until the rain BECOMES "finished"
I'll MAKE that matter "apparent"
This matter IS not "apparent" to me



Digitized by Google

Obviously, all these sentence pairs are built on the same pattern as the one cited under (a): "make" the place high, vs. (the place) "is" or "becomes" dark.

Note again that occasionally one and the same English equivalent may be used to translate freely both the *karnaa* and the *hoonaa* phrases: *aap hindustaan pasand kartee hãĩ* 'you "make India liked" ' and *aap-koo hindustaan pasand hai:* 'India "is liked" to you' are both rendered idiomatically by "You like India."

On the other hand, be very careful to distinguish *šuruu hoonaa* and *xatam hoonaa* from *šuruu karnaa* and *xatam karnaa*. Compare:

*sinamaa šuruu hootaa hai* "the movie becomes started, it starts"
*ustaad kilaas šuruu karee-gaa* "the teacher makes the class started, he starts the class"
*baariš xatam hootii hai* "the rain becomes ending, comes to an end, ends'
*khaanaa xatam karẽẽ* 'let us make the eating finished, let us put an end to the meal, let us end the meal'

In other words, *šuruu* (and *xatam*) *hoonaa* is 'to start (finish) BEING in a state of . . . , to have its origin (to come to an end)', while *šuruu* (and *xatam*) *karnaa* is 'to start (finish) SOMETHING, to get something started (to put an end to . . .)'.

3. It is important to keep apart NOUN and ADJECTIVE constructions. Compare the examples given above under (1) (nouns) and (2) (adjectives), and, in addition, note the following:

*hindustaanii boolnee-kii koošiš kartee hãĩ* 'They make an effort of speaking Hindustani; they try to speak Hindustani'
*tum meerii daauat karoo-gee* 'You will do invitation of me ("my" invitation); you will invite me'
*us-kii marammat karaaoo* 'have its repair made; have them repaired'
*ham-koo laRaaii jiitnee-kii xuaahiš hai* 'To us there is the wish of winning the war; we wish to win the war'



Digitized by Google

These phrases are NOUN constructions much like the ones cited under (1), except that here the nouns are further modified by preceding adjectives: *meerii daauat, boolnee-kii koošiš, us-kii marammat, jiitnee-kii xuaahiš.*

To check your understanding of these constructions, contrast the last examples (NOUNS) with the ones under (2) (ADJECTIVES); for instance:

*boolnee-kii koošiš karẽẽ* 'Let us try to speak'
vs.: *khaanaa xatam karẽẽ* 'Let us finish eating'

Note: *karaanaa* 'to have something done' as in *marammat karaanaa* 'to have fixed' is found in the same combinations as *karnaa* 'to do'.

Note: You will find later that some words can be used both as adjectives and as nouns with *karnaa* and *hoonaa*. Thus, your Guide may give some of the above examples in different constructions. If so, disregard the particular example, and keep to the others.

## C. DIRECT OBJECT

1. *kiaa aap iee šaher jaantee hãī*
   *kiaa aap is šaher-koo jaantee hãī* } 'Do you know this city?'
   *kiaa aap un-kii bahen-koo jaantee hãī* 'Do you know their sister?'

In the first example, *kiaa aap šaher jaantee hãī*, there are two straight-case expressions, *aap* and *šaher*. One, the SUBJECT, makes the verb agree in gender and number (*aap jaantee hãī; aap jaantii hãī; mãī jaantaa hũũ;* etc.) The other, which has no effect on the verb form (*šaher jaantee hãī, šaher jaantii hai*, etc.) is called the OBJECT or DIRECT OBJECT. So far, the Hindustani construction is about the same as in English. (See *Comment B.*)

However, instead of saying: "You know the city", a Hindustani speaker may also say something like "You know "TO" the city", *aap šaher-koo jaantee hãī.* This makes the whole expression a little more definite and precise, but otherwise there is, in this particular instance, little difference in meaning. If, however, the direct object in English is a PERSON rather than a THING, Hindustani decidedly prefers the *-koo* construction: *meeree baap-koo nahĩĩ jaantee* 'You don't know my father'.



Digitized by Google

2. *uoo laaiiee*
   *us-koo laaiiee* } 'Please bring it'
   *us-koo laaiiee* 'Please bring him (her)'

   *uoo liijiiee*
   *un-koo liijiiee* } 'Please take them (for instance, coins) away'
   *un-koo liijiiee* 'Please take them (persons) over'

   *kiaa aap mujh-koo jaantee hãĩ?* 'Do you know me?'
   *mãĩ kis-koo deekhũũ* 'Whom shall I see?'

The *-koo* construction is not only preferred, but absolutely necessary if the direct object is a PRONOUN (rather than a noun) referring to a PERSON. The straight case of a pronoun as a direct object always refers to a THING, never to a person.

## D. "TIME"

*pahᵉlii dafaa* 'the first time'
*tiin dafaa* 'three times'

*dafaa* means 'turn, occurrence', hence 'time' as in the expressions quoted above. It is a feminine noun without any case endings in the singular. Other expressions: *is dafaa* 'this time'; *kisii dafaa* 'sometimes'; *bahot dafaa* 'often'.

Be careful to distinguish *dafaa* from *uaḳt*. *uaḳt* is the word for 'time' in the general sense 'period of time, time of the day, time to do something' : *kis uaḳt* 'at what time?'; *soonee-kaa uaḳt hai* 'it's time to sleep'.



Digitized by Google

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Select the correct Hindustani sentence:

1. I'll meet you at a quarter past five:
   a. *mãĩ tum-koo saaRhee pããč bajee milũũ-gaa.*
   b. *mãĩ tum-koo sauaa pããč bajee milũũ-gaa.*
   c. *mãĩ tum-koo paunee pããč bajee milũũ-gaa.*

2. I eat here (for) the fifth time:
   a. *mãĩ pããč dafaa iahãã khaanaa khaataa hũũ.*
   b. *mãĩ pããčuĩĩ dafaa iahãã khaanaa khaataa hũũ.*
   c. *mãĩ pããč bajee iahãã khaanaa khaataa hũũ.*

3. I want to leave some money for the waiter:
   a. *mãĩ naukar-kee liiee, kuč paisaa čhooRnaa čaahᵉtaa hũũ.*
   b. *mãĩ xazaančii-kee liiee, kuch paisaa čhooRnaa čaahᵉtaa hũũ.*
   c. *mãĩ bičaaree-kee liiee, kuch paisaa čhooRnaa čaahᵉtaa hũũ.*

Say the following sentences in Hindustani:

4. He always talks about the weather.
5. There are about thirteen students in the class.
6. Last year we were in New York.
7. Next year we'll go to India.
8. He finishes eating at half past seven.
9. The movie ends at 8:15.
10. After the rain begins I'll need a raincoat.
11. When do you start writing?
12. He tries to write.
13. Let's invite him.
14. I want to have my shoes repaired.
15. What time is it?
16. How many times were you in India?
17. It is time to go.
18. I'll go to New York for the first time.



Digitized by Google

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. At the shoemaker's.

Das: *andar aaiiee janaab;*
*mãĩ aap-kee liiee kiaa karũũ.*

Jack: *mãĩ apnee juutee-kii marammat karaanaa čaah$^{e}$taa hũũ.*
*kiaa tum us-kii marammat kar saktee hoo?*

Das: *zaruur janaab. iee too meeraa peešaa hai.*

Jack: *uoo kab taiiaar hoo-gaa.*
*mujh-koo us-kii jaldii zaruurat hai.*

Das: *kal doo paher-kee pah$^{e}$lee taiiaar hoo nahĩĩ saktaa.*

Jack: *uoo bahot deer hai.*
*mujhee aaj raat-koo is juutee-kii zaruurat hai.*

Das: *leekin janaab,*
*iee juutaa bahot phaTaa hai.*
*mãĩ aaj us-kii marammat nahĩĩ kar saktaa.*
*laRaaii-kii uajaa-see meeree paas sirf eek kaam karneeuaalaa hai, aur bičaaraa bahot kaam kartaa hai.*
*kabhii kabhii us-koo kuch tamaašaa deekhnaa čaahiiee.*
*aur is liiee mãĩ aaj akeelaa hũũ.*
*iee juutaa kal doo zaruur paher-mẽẽ taiiaar hoo-gaa.*

Jack: *leekin aap-koo maaluum hai kee aaj raat-koo mujhee is juutee-kii zaruurat hai.*
*meerii čhuTTii aaj šuruu hootii hai, aur kal subaa-koo mãĩ safar-mẽẽ jaanaa čaah$^{e}$taa hũũ.*

Das: *aap-kii gaaRii kab jaaee-gii.*

Jack: *Thiik saaRhee das bajee subaa.*

Das: *mujh-koo afsoos hai. leekin das bajee-see pah$^{e}$lee mãĩ iee juutaa nahĩĩ banaa saktaa.*

Jack: *too mãĩ duusrii jagaa jaaũũ-gaa.*

Das: *mujhee bahot afsoos hai, janaab, duusrii dafaa šaaed aap-kee liiee kučh kar sakuũ.*
*xudaa haafiz.*

2. Plans for a vacation.

*duusree mahiinee mujh-koo čhuTTii milee-gii, aur mãĩ gaaõõ-koo jaaũũ-gaa.*
*mãĩ apnee eek doost-kii daauat karũũ-gaa, aur ham doonõõ paidal jaaẽẽ-gee.*
*mãĩ eek puraanaa jooRaa juutaa pah$^{e}$nũũ-gaa, aur baariš-kee liiee ham-koo barsaatii-kii zaruurat hoo-gii.*
*tiin čaar dinõõ-mẽẽ, ham pahaaR-mẽẽ pãh$^{o}$čẽẽ-gee.*



Digitized by Google

*aur uahãã duusree haftee-tak rahẽẽ-gee.*

*nadii-kee ḳariib, māī eek bahot xuubsuurat jagaa jaantaa hũũ.*

*uahãã har din dhuup hai. leekin bahot garmii nahīī.*

*ham bahot mazaa karẽẽ-gee.*

*too eek haftee-kee baad ham uaapas aaẽẽ-gee, aur māī kaam phir šuruu karũũ-gaa.*

3. Das and Mrs. Das.

Das: *aap samajhtii hãī kee baččõõ-koo eek din sarkas[1]-mẽẽ lee jaaẽẽ?*

Mrs. Das: *iee too bahot ačchii baat hai.*

Das: *too phir pahᵉlee-see ᴛikiᴛ xariidnaa čaahiiee.*

Mrs. Das: *tamaašaa kitnee bajee šuruu hootaa hai.*

Das: *pahᵉlii dafaa saaʀhee tiin bajee doo paher-mẽẽ, aur phir duusrii dafaa paunee aaᴛh bajee šaam-koo. leekin raat-kaa tamaašaa bahot deer-mẽẽ xatam hootaa hai.*

*uoo baččõõ-kee liiee ᴛhiik nahīī.*

[1]'circus'

Mrs. Das: *guzrii dafaa ham loog* John-*kii biiuii-kii* mehᵉ*maan thee. is dafaa ham un-kii daauat karẽẽ.*

Das: *too ituaar-koo sauaa eek bajee khaanee-kii daauat karẽẽ, aur phir sab tamaašee-koo čalẽẽ.*

*taḳriiban paunee ghanᴛee-mẽẽ uahãã pãhᵉčẽẽ-gee.*

Mrs. Das: *kiaa ᴛikiᴛ bahot mãhegaa hai?*

*mehᵉmaan loogõ-kii uajee-see ačchii jagaa hoonaa čaahiiee.*

Das: *baččõõ-kaa eek ᴅaalar, aur baʀee loogõõ-kaa ᴅeeʀh.*

*iee maamulii sarkas nahīī.*

*duniiãã-mẽẽ sab-see baʀaa aur mašhuur hai.*

Mrs. Das: *baččõõ-kee liiee čauthee iaa pããcuẽẽ nambar-kii jagaa ᴛhiik hoo-gii.*

*bahot piičhee hoonee-see uoo nahīī deekh sakẽẽ-gee.*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. You arrive in a strange village, where you plan to stay for some time. Inquire about the number of inhabitants, the drinking water, local climate, etc. Find out how far you are from the nearest railroad station and what's the best way to get there.

   b. You are inviting fifteen of your friends to dinner at a restaurant. Go to the restaurant and make arrangements for the meal. Try to get a special price.

   c. Your little boy is going away to visit your parents in the country for his vacation. Take him to town to get some new clothes and to have his hair cut, and then put him on the train.

2. Questions and answers.

Run through the *Listening In* once more. Then answer the following questions when the Guide asks you, or take turns asking them of others and answering them:

1. Jack *kiaa čaah$^{e}$taa hai.*
   *daas-kaa peešaa kiaa hai.*
   Jack-*koo juutee-kii kab zaruurat hai.*
   *juutaa kab taiiaar hoo-gaa.*
   Jack *daas-kee jauaab kiõõ pasand nahĩĩ kartaa.*
   *juutee-kii marammat karnaa bahot uaḳt kiõõ lagtaa hai.*
   *daas-kee paas kaun-see kaam karneeuaalee hootee hãĩ.*
   *kiaa akeelaa hai?*
   *kaam karneeuaalaa kahãã hai.*
   *kiaa* Jack *šaher-mẽẽ rahee-gaa?*
   *us-kee baad daas ḳahãã jaataa hai.*

2. *čhuTTii kab milee-gii.*
   *uoo aadmii kahãã jaaee-gaa.*
   *kiaa akeelaa hoo-gaa?*
   *kis ḳisim-kaa safar karee-gaa. kiaa mooTar-see?*
   *kis ḳisim-kee kapRee pah$^{e}$nẽẽ-gee.*

3. *kiaa daas aur daas-kee biiuii-kee paas TikiT hãĩ?*
   *kiaa pah$^{e}$lee tamaašee-koo jaaẽẽ-gee, iaa duusree raat-kaa tamaašaa kab šuruu hootaa hai.*
   *iee un-kee liiee kiõõ Thiik nahĩĩ.*
   *TikiT-kaa daam kiaa hai.*
   *kis ḳisim-kii jagaa-kaa TikiT beečtee hãĩ.*
   *TikiT mãh$^{e}$gee kiõõ hãĩ.*
   *sarkas-mẽẽ kiaa daas-kii biiuii akeelii jaaee-gii?*
   *daas aur biiuii* John-*kii biiuii-kii daauat kis uaḳt-koo karẽẽ-gee.*
   *sarkas-mẽẽ pahõcnaa kitnaa uaḳt lagtaa hai.*
   *baččee sarkas-mẽẽ kis jagaa hõõ-gee.*



Digitized by Google

*b*

*bičaaraa* poor, to be pitied

*č*

*čauthaa* fourth

*d*

*daauat* (*-ii*) invitation
*-ii daauat karnaa* to invite
*dafaa* (*-ii*) time, turn
*kitnii dafaa* how many times
*duniiãã* (*-ii*) world

*D*

*Daalar* dollar
*DeeRh* one-and-a-half

*g*

*guzraa* past

*j*

*jiitnaa* to win, conquer, defeat
*jooRaa* pair

*k*

*karaanaa* to have something done

*m*

*maamulii* usual, ordinary
*mahiinaa* month
*marammat* (*-ii*) repair
*-ii marammat karaanaa* to have repaired
*meh$^{e}$maan* guest
*mujhee* to me (= *mujh-koo*)

*n*

*nambar* number
*nuuiaark* New York

*p*

*pããčuãã* fifth
*pahennaa* to wear, put on
*paunee* a quarter to (the hour), minus a quarter
*phaTaa* torn, worn out

*s*

*saaRhee* plus a half
*sauaa* a quarter past (the hour), plus a quarter

*š*

*šuruu karnaa* to begin, to start (something)

*t*

*takriiban* approximately, about
*tumhaaraa* your

*x*

*xatam karnaa* to finish, to end (something)
*xazaančii* cashier, treasurer
*xuaahiš* (*-ii*) wish, desire



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 14

## A STAY IN INDIA

### SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| Tom: | |
| Have you ever been in India? | *aap kabhii hindustaan-mẽẽ thee?* |
| Paul: | |
| four years ago | *čaar saal huuee,* |
| I went | *gaiaa.* |
| Yes, I went to India with a friend four years ago. | *jii hãã. čaar saal huuee, mãĩ eek doost-kee saath hindustaan-koo gaiaa.* |
| Tom: | |
| Where did you go? | *aap kahãã gaee.* |
| Paul: | |
| To Calcutta. | *kalkattee-koo.* |
| relative | *rišteedaar.* |
| My friend's relatives used to live there. | *meeree doost-kee rišteedaar uahãã rahᵊtee thee.* |
| His two sisters studied in school, but when we arrived they were having a vacation and [so] they met us. | *us-kii doo bahᵊnẽẽ iskuul-mẽẽ paʀhtii thĩĩ. leekin jab ham pãhᵊčee, un-koo čhuTTii thii, aur uoo ham-koo milĩĩ.* |



Digitized by Google

Tom:

Did you like India? — *kiaa hindustaan aap-koo pasand thaa?*

Paul:

country — *mulk,*
interest — *dilčaspii.*
India's a great country and darned interesting. — *hindustaan bahot aččhaa mulk hai, aur mujh-koo us-see bahot dilčaspii hai.*

to be bearable — *bardaašt hoonaa,*
did not become — *na-huuaa.*
But my friend couldn't stand the weather. — *leekin meeree doost-koo mausam bardaašt na-huuaa.*

frost, shivering — *jaaRaa.*
He got malaria and we realized he had to go to the hospital. — *us-koo jaaRee-kaa buxaar aaiaa, aur ham samjhee kee aspataal-koo jaanee-kii zaruurat hai.*

to take somewhere — *lee jaanaa.*
So I took him (to the hospital). — *too mãī us-koo aspataal lee gaiaa.*

doctor — *DaakTar,*
bitter — *kaRuaa,*
medicine — *dauaaii.*
He got some medicine from the doctor. — *DaakTar-see us-koo kuč dauaaii milii.*

prohibition — *manaahii.*
And they wouldn't let him talk. — *aur baatčiit karnee-kii manaahii thii.*

Tom:

illness — *biimaarii.*
Was he very sick? — *kiaa us-kii biimaarii bahot saxt thii?*



Digitized by Google

Paul:

God — *xudaa.*
[No,] thank Heavens. — *xudaa-kii meherbaanii.*

result — *faaedaa,*
permission — *ijaazat.*
The medicine didn't take long to show results and he was allowed to leave the hospital. — *dauaaii-see jaldii faaedaa huuaa aur aspataal čhooRnee-kii ijaazat huuii.*

Tom:

When did you come back then? — *too aap kab uaapas aaee.*

Paul:

weak — *kamzoor.*
After leaving the hospital my friend was rather weak. — *aspataal-see jaanee-kee baad meeree doost kuč kamzoor thee.*

So we stayed on for some time with his relatives. — *aur is liiee ham loog kuč din un-kee rišteedaarõõ-kee saath rahee.*

to leave (= to take off, get away) — *čhuuTnaa.*
But our ship left two weeks later so we returned. — *leekin doo haftee-kee baad, hamaaraa jahaaz čhuuTaa, aur ham uaapas aaee.*

Tom:

sea — *samandar.*
Do you like traveling by boat? — *kiaa samandar jaanaa aap-koo pasand hai?*

Paul:

usually — *aam taur-par.*
I usually do. — *aam taur-par, mujh-koo pasand hai.*



Digitized by Google

storm

But that time there was a storm and the trip was anything but pleasant.

*tuufaan.*

*leekin us uakt baRaa tuufaan huuaa. aur safar aččhaa na-thaa.*

Tom:

present

Did you bring any presents from India?

*toh°faa.*

*kiaa aap hindustaan-see kooii toh°fee laaee?*

Paul:

as a present

Yes, I brought [along] some Hindu clothes (with me) as a present for my wife.

*toh°fee-kee taur-par.*

*jii hãã; māī biiuii-kee liiee, toh°fee-kee taur-par, kuch hindustaanii kapRee apnee saath laaiaa.*

Tom:

Do you want to go back to India?

*kiaa aap hindustaan-koo uaapas jaanaa čaah°tee hãī?*

Paul:

possible

You can't go to India now because of the war.

*mumkin.*

*abhii laRaaii-kii uajee-see hindustaan-koo jaanaa mumkin nahīī.*

But I'll go back to India, when the war's over.

*leekin laRaaii jiitnee-kee baad, māī hindustaan-koo uaapas jaaũū-gaa.*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. DURATION IN THE PAST

*meeree doost-kee rišteedaar uahãã rahᵉtee thee* 'my friend's relatives used to live there, lived there'
*us-kii doo bahᵉnẽẽ iskuul-mee paʀhtii thīī* 'his two sisters studied in school'

Compare the above examples with such familiar ones as:

*rišteedaar akeelee hãī* 'the relatives are alone'
*rišteedaar akeelee thee* 'the relatives were alone'
*bahᵉnẽẽ kaisii hãī* 'how are the sisters?'
*bahᵉnẽẽ kaisii thīī* 'how were the sisters?'
*baraf gir rahii hai* '(snow is in the process of falling,) it is snowing'
*baraf gir rahii thii* 'it was snowing (just then)'

In much the same way as the adjectives *akeelaa* (*-ee*, *-ii*) or *kaisaa* (*-ee*, *-ii*) or the phrase *gir rahaa* (*-ee*, *-ii*), the *-taa* (*-tee*, *-tii*)-form of any verb can be followed by *thaa*, *thii* 'was', *thee*, *thīī* 'were' just as well as it can be followed by *hũũ*, *hai*, *hãī:*

*rišteedaar uahãã rahᵉtee haī* 'the relatives are living there, live there'
*rišteedaar uahãã rahᵉtee thee* 'the relatives were living there, used to live there'
*bahᵉnẽẽ paʀhtii hãī* '(the sisters are studying ones), the sisters study'
*bahᵉnẽẽ paʀhtii thīī* '(the sisters were studying ones), the sisters kept studying, studied (a great deal)'.

The *-taa* (*-tee*, *-tii*)-form of the verb *rahᵉtaa*, *paʀhtii*, *dikhaatee*, etc.) will from now on be referred to as the PRESENT PARTICIPLE. The combination of the present participle with *thaa* implies DURATION in the past rather than merely a past event: *mãī rahᵉtaa thaa* 'I used to stay, stayed all the time'; *tum paʀhtee thee* 'you used to study, were studying all the time, kept studying'.

### B. PAST TENSE

*hamaaraa jahaaz čhuuTaa* 'our ship left'
*ham loog un-kee rišteedaarõõ-kee saath rahee* 'we lived with his relatives'
*us-koo kuč dauaii milii* '(some medicine was available to him) he got some medicine'
*us-kii bahᵉnẽẽ ham-koo milīī* 'his sisters met us'

With reference to a past EVENT (in telling a story, reporting a happening) you use the PAST TENSE forms. They are made up of the verbal stems (*čhuuT-*, *rah-* *mil*, etc.) and the endings *-aa*, *-ii* (singular; masculine and



Digitized by Google

feminine respectively), *-ee*, *-ĩĩ* (plural; masculine and feminine). You are already familiar with these endings in the forms *thaa*, *thee*, *thii*, *thĩĩ*, which are, in fact, the past tense forms of the verb 'to be'.

Compare:

*jahaaz čhuuTtee hai* 'the ships leave'
*jahaaz čhuuTee* 'the ships left'
*us-koo dauaaiiãã miltii hãĩ* 'he (she . . .) gets medicines'
*us-koo dauaaiiãã milĩĩ* 'he got medicines'
*us-koo dauaaiiãã miltii thĩĩ* 'he kept getting medicines'
*us-koo dauaaiiãã mil rahii hãĩ* 'he is just getting (some) medicines'
*us-koo dauaaiiãã mil rahii thĩĩ* 'he was just getting (some) medicines'

If you are not sure of these phrases, look up the *Word Study* comments in Unit 9.

Note: (1) Do NOT try to make up past tense forms before reading *Comment* D.

(2) Do not be confused by the fact that the Hindustani for '(I, they, etc.) stayed,' *rahaa* happens to be the same form as the one used in such phrases as *gir rahaa hai* 'is falling,' etc.

## C. *SAMJHAA*, *RAHAA* (*RAHŨŨ*), *AAIAA*, *GAIAA*, *HUUAA*

1. *ham samjhee* 'we understood'
   *ham pãh°čee* 'we arrived'

All four past tense endings (*-aa*, *-ee*, *-ii*, *-ĩĩ*) consist of vowels. Consequently, stems like *samajh-* and *pahõč-* (. . . *VCVC*(*h*)-) will drop their second short vowel before those endings (. . . *VCC*(*h*)-). In other words, stems have the same appearance as in the subjunctive.

Compare:

| | |
|---|---|
| *samajhtii hai* | 'she understands' |
| *samjhee*(*-gii*) | 'she may (will) understand' |
| *samjhii* | 'she understood' |
| *pahõčnaa* | 'to arrive' |
| *pãh°čoo* | 'arrive!' |
| *pãh°čaa* | '(I, he . . .) arrived' |

2. *rišteedaarõõ-kee saath rahee* 'we stayed with the relatives'

*čup rahoo* 'keep quiet!'

The forms *rahee*, *rahoo* show what happens to stems that end in $h^e$ when they are followed by a vowel ending: the $h^e$ is replaced by an ordinary *h*. Thus, we get



Digitized by Google

*rahaa, rahũũ, rahoo-gee;* also, *kahũũ-gaa* 'I am going to say', *kahẽẽ* 'they might say'.

3. *aap kab uaapas aaee* 'when did you come back?'
   *buxaar aaiaa* 'a fever came, he (I, they . . .) got fever'
   *kiaa aap kooii tohºfee laaee?* 'did you bring any presents?'
   *mãĩ kuč kapʀee apnee saath laaiaa* 'I brought some clothes with me.'

After stems ending in *-aa* (and *-oo*) the past tense ending for the singular masculine is *-iaa* (rather than just *-aa*):

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *uoo aaiaa* | 'he came' | *mãĩ sooiaa* | 'I slept' |
| *uoo aaii* | 'she came' | *uoo sooii* | 'she slept' |
| *aaee, aaĩĩ* | 'they came' | *sooee, sooĩĩ* | 'they slept' |

4. *hindustaan-koo gaiaa* 'I went to India'
   *us-koo aspataal lee gaiaa* 'I took him to the hospital'
   *aap kahãã gaee* 'Where did you go?'

The past of *jaanaa* 'to go' is quite irregular (compare English "I go, gone" vs. "I went"):

*gaiaa, gaii* (singular; masculine and feminine respectively)
*gaee, gaĩĩ* (plural; masculine and feminine).

5. *dauaaii-see faaedaa huuaa* '(from the medicine result came forth), the medicine had effect.'
   *meeree doost-koo mausam bardaašt na-huuaa* '(to my friend the weather became not bearable), my friend couldn't stand the weather.'

The past tense forms that go with the present tense *hootaa hai* 'it becomes, goes on, happens' are irregular: *huuaa, huii* (singular); *huuee, huuĩĩ* (plural) 'became, went on, happened.'

If you go through all our examples in the *Basic Sentences* you will find that the verb *hoonaa* 'to be, to become, etc.' has quite a peculiar set of forms. They may be listed as follows:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| STEM | | *hoo* (*saktaa hai*) | | '(he can) be, become, happen' |
| INFINITIVE | | *hoonaa* | | 'to be, become, happen' |
| SUBJUNCTIVE (FUTURE) | (*mãĩ*) | *hũũ* | (*-gaa, -gii*) | 'may (will) be, become, happen' |
| | (*uoo*, etc.) | *hoo* | | |
| | (*loog*, etc.) | *hõõ* | (*-gee, -gii*) | |
| | (*tum*) | *hoo* | | |



Digitized by Google

For the PRESENT and PAST tenses, we have two sets of forms each, their meanings somewhat different:

| SET 1 | | SET 2 | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (*māī*) *hũũ* | 'am' | *hootaa* (*-ii*) *hũũ* | 'become(s) happen(s)' |
| (*uoo . . .*) *hai* | 'is' | *hootaa* (*-ii*) *hai* | |
| (*loog . . .*) *hãī* | 'are' | *hootee* (*-ii*) *hãī* | |
| (*tum*) *hoo* | | *hootee* (*-ii*) *hoo* | |
| *thaa*, *thii* | 'was' | *huaa*, *huuii* | 'became, happened' |
| *thee*, *thīī* | 'were' | *huuee*, *huuīī* | |

## D. LIST OF NEUTER VERBS

The following is a list of verbs which you can safely use in their past tense forms:

| | |
|---|---|
| *aanaa* | *aaiaa* (*aaee*, *aaii*, *aaīī*) |
| *baiTHnaa* | *baiTHaa* (*baiTHee*, etc.) |
| *boolnaa* | *boolaa* |
| *čalnaa* | *čalaa* |
| *čhuuTnaa* | *čhuuTaa* |
| *dikhnaa* | *dikhaa* |
| *girnaa* | *giraa* |
| *hoonaa* | (1) *thaa* (2) *huuaa* |
| *jaanaa* (including *lee jaanaa*) | (*lee*) *gaiaa* (*gaee*, *gaii*, *gaīī*) |
| *laanaa* | *laaiaa* (*laaee*, etc.) |
| *lagnaa* | *lagaa* |
| *milnaa* | *milaa* |
| *pahᵒčnaa* | *pãhᵒčaa* |
| *rahᵉnaa* | *rahaa* |
| *saknaa* | *sakaa* |
| *samajhnaa* | *samjhaa* |
| *soonaa* | *sooiaa* (*sooee*, etc.) |
| *ThairnaaTH* | *ThairaaTH* |



Digitized by Google

These verbs we shall call, with an arbitrary term, NEUTER verbs.

The past tense forms of the other verbs are used in an entirely different way as far as the makeup of the sentences is concerned. This will be discussed in a later unit.

## E. *NA-*

*mausam bardaašt na-huuaa* 'the weather became not-bearable; (he . . .) couldn't stand the weather'

Before most verb forms (but never before an ordinary present tense expression!) the English "not" may be expressed by *na-*. Before past tense forms, both *nahĩĩ* and *na-* are found: *kooii jahaaz nahĩĩ čhuuTaa* or *kooii jahaaz na-čhuuTaa* 'no ship left.'

If you listen to the phrase *leekin meeree doost-koo mausam bardaašt ná-huuaa* either on the records or when your Guide pronounces it, you may notice that the syllable *ná-* is strongly emphasized. As a matter of fact *na-* 'not', just like *mat-* 'don't', usually bears a heavy stress in a sentence.

## F. *IIUUAA* 'AGO'

*mãĩ čaar saal huuee hindustaan-koo gaiaa* 'four years ago I went to India'.

. . . *huuaa* here means '(such-and-such a time) ago.' It agrees in number and gender with the preceding noun indicating the measure of time: *eek saal huuaa* 'one year ago'; *thooRee din huuee* 'a few days ago.' These phrases are, then, actually little sentences stuck into the main sentence: "I—four years have now passed by—went to India." Notice how different the construction *eek saal huuaa* is from the familiar one, *eek saal-kee baad.*

*guzraa* is used in the same way:
*eek din guzraa, das din guzree* 'one, ten days ago'

## G. TENSE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

*ham samjhee kee aspataal-koo jaanee-kii zaruurat hai* 'we realized he had to go to the hospital'.

In this sentence, the equivalent of (*zaruurat*) *hai*—a present tense in Hindustani—is 'he had to'—a past tense in English. You might expect *zaruurat thii* rather than *hai*, and that would, in fact, be acceptable Hindustani as well. The explanation for *hai* is of course the same as for *rahoo* in the phrase *un-koo kahᵉtaa hũũ kee čup rahoo* 'I tell them to be quiet!' The speaker quotes himself literally: 'We realized (at that time:) "he has to go to the hospital" ' (just as: 'I tell them: "be quiet" '). In most cases, such literal quotation of one's thoughts or sayings is better Hindustani than the "indirect discourse" which is preferred in English.



Digitized by Google

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Give the Hindustani equivalent for the following:

1. The train leaves at five o'clock.
2. The train left at five o'clock.
3. The train used to leave at five o'clock.
4. She came early.
5. I went home.
6. I used to go to school.
7. It took three hours to go home.
8. I didn't understand.
9. The girls arrived yesterday.
10. She sat down on this chair.
11. He got much money.
12. The boys slept.

2. Read aloud the following and pick out the expression you think most suitable:

1. Singing is forbidden in this class:

   a. *is kilaas-mẽẽ gaanee-kii ijaazat hai.*
   b. *is kilaas-mẽẽ gaanee-kii maanaahii hai.*
   c. *is kilaas-mẽẽ gaanaa mumkin nahĩĩ.*

2. She cannot stand fog:

   a. *us-koo koh°raa pasand nahĩĩ.*
   b. *us-koo koh°raa hoonee-kii ummiid nahĩĩ.*
   c. *us-koo koh°raa bardaašt nahĩĩ.*

3. I don't like presents:

   a. *toh°fee mujh-koo pasand nahĩĩ.*
   b. *aam taur-par mujh-koo pasand nahĩĩ.*
   c. *tuufaan mujh-koo pasand nahĩĩ.*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. At the hospital entrance.

Das: *mãĩ raam laal-see milnaa čaahᵉtaa hũũ.*
*mãĩ samajhtaa hũũ kee uoo is aspataal-mẽẽ hai.*

*munšii: kitnee din huuee aaiaa.*

Das: *tiin din huuee.*

*munšii: us-koo kiaa biimaarii hai.*

Das: *us-koo jaaRee-kaa buxaar hai.*

*munšii: thooRii der Thairiiee;*
*mãĩ kitaab-mẽẽ deekhtaa hũũ.*
*ačchaa janaab;*
*raam laal-kaa kamraa pããčuẽẽ darjee-par hai.*
*us-kaa nambar teeis hai.*
*leekin abhii, aap us-koo deekh nahĩĩ saktee.*
*iee khaanee-kaa uaḳt hai.*
*us-see saaRhee tiin bajee mil saktee hãĩ.*
*kiaa aap us-kee rišteedaar hãĩ?*

Das: *jii nahĩĩ. uoo meeraa doost hai. kiaa meeree doost-kii biimaarii bahot saxt hai?*

*munšii: maamulii biimaarii hai. leekin uoo bahot kamzoor hai.*
*us-koo aaraam-kii zaruurat hai. us-see ziaadaa baatčiit mat-kiijiiee.*

Das: *kiaa mãĩ us-kee liiee ghar-see kuch khaanaa laa saktaa hũũ?*

*munšii: is-kii ijaazat nahĩĩ.*
*aap-kee doost-koo aspataal-kaa khaanaa miltaa hai.*

2. Visiting a patient.

Das: *tum kaisee hoo.*

Ram Lal: *meeraa xiaal hai kee mãĩ bahot biimaar hũũ.*

Doctor: *kiaa tum-koo dauaaii milii?*

Ram Lal: *kaRuii dauaaii?*
*uoo too zaruur miltii hai.*

Doctor: *kiaa abhii-tak kuch faaedaa nahĩĩ?*
*aaj bhii buxaar aaiaa?*

Ram Lal: *aaj too kuch deer-see aaiaa.*

Doctor: *too tum ačchee hoo rahee hoo.*

Das: *deekhoo; uoo aadmii ghar-kaa khaanaa khaa rahaa hai, leekin tumhaaree liiee, DaakTar-kii manaahii hai.*

Doctor: *deer hootii hai janaab.*
*meherbaanii-see ab jaaiiee.*



Digitized by Google

3. Jack is talking to the manager of a restaurant.

Jack: *kiaa aap dukaan-kee maalik hãĩ?*

Manager: *jii nahĩĩ. mãĩ maniijar*[1] *hũũ.*
*aap-koo kiaa zaruurat hai?*
*maalik-see milnee-kii xuaahiš hai? too uoo sirf saaRhee čhai, aur paunee das bajee-kee darmiaan-mẽẽ aam taur-par iahãã hootaa hai.*

Jack: *mãĩ apnee doostõõ aur rišteedaarõõ-kii daauat karnee-kee liiee khaanee-kii ḳiimat maaluum karnaa čaah$^{e}$taa hũũ.*

Manager: *iahãã too aam taur-par daam bahot maamulii hai.*
*aur khaanaa bhii mazeedaar hai.*

Jack: *is jagaa kitnee loog aaraam-see baiTh saktee hãĩ.*

[1] 'Manager'.

Manager: *čaaliis aadmiiõõ-see ziaadaa-kii ijaazat nahĩĩ. uarnaa iee jagaa čhooTii hai.*

Jack: *meeree eek rišteedaar joo kučh biimaar aur kamzoor hãĩ samandar-kee safar-see uaapas aaee hãĩ. un-koo teez khaanaa khaanee-kii manaahii hai.*
*kiaa kučh xaas khaanaa milnaa mumkin hai?*

Manager: *xušii-see.*

Jack: *tiis aadmiiõõ-kee khaanee-kii kiaa ḳiimat hai.*

Manager: *sirf pãĩtaaliis rupaee.*
*meherbaanii-see xazaančii-koo paisaa diijiiee.*

Jack: *mujh-koo ummiid hai, kee meeree meh$^{e}$maanõõ-kee liiee sab Thiik hoo-gaa.*

Manager: *zaruur janaab. aap-kee meh$^{e}$maanõõ-koo kučh toh$^{o}$fee bhii milẽẽ-gee.*

Jack: *šukriiaa. too meeree sab doost daauat karẽẽ-gee.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. Ask one of your fellow students what he used to do before he got into the army. Let him describe an ordinary day, what, where and when he used to eat, and what kind of work he used to do, where he used to live, etc.

b. You've just spent your first night in a hotel, and you are very dissatisfied. Complain to the clerk. Tell him that you've just come from the hospital, that you've been very ill and that you're still weak and need rest. Your room is right above the



Digitized by Google

restaurant and you didn't sleep all night because of the noise. Add any other complaints you can think of. Make him give you a different room.

c. You go into a store to buy a present for a friend who's going to get married next week. You don't know what to buy and ask the storekeeper for advice. He tries to sell you almost everything he has in the store. Don't let him talk you into buying anything you don't want.

2. QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS.

Run through the *Listening In* once more. Then answer the following questions when the Guide asks you, or take turns asking and answering them:

1. *doo aadmii baatčiit kahãã kar rahee hãĩ.*
   *kiaa daas raam laal-kaa rišteedaar hai?*
   *raam laal kab-see aspataal-mẽẽ hai?*
   *biimaarii kis kisim-kii hai?*
   *kiaa daas us-koo mil saktaa hai?*
   *biimaar loogõõ-koo kis čiiz-kii manaahii hai.*

2. *kiaa raam laal ačchaa hai?*
   *us-kaa xiaal kiaa hai.*
   *dauaaii pasand hai?*
   *buxaar deer-see kiõõ aaiaa?*
   *sab biimaar loogõõ-koo ghar-kaa khaanee-kii manaahii hai?*
   *daas kiõõ jaataa hai.*

3. *maalik kab uaapas hoo-gaa.*
   Jack *kis čiiz-kii kiimat maaluum karnaa čaahᵉtaa hai.*
   *maniijar ʏhiik jauaab deetaa hai?*
   *kitnee loog aa sakẽẽ-gee?*
   *kiaa sab mehᵉmaan maamulii khaanaa khaaẽẽ-gee?*

Think up other questions on the *Listening In*.

## FINDER LIST

*a*

*aam taur-par* — usually

*b*

*bardaašt* — bearable
*b. kar saknaa* — to bear
*us-koo b. (hootaa) hai* — he can bear
*biimaarii (-ii)* — illness, disease

*č*

*čhuuʏnaa* — to leave (= get away)

*d*

*dauaaii (-ii)* — medicine
*dilcašpii (-ii)* — interest

*D*

*Daakʏar* — doctor



Digitized by Google

*f*

*faaedaa* profit, result

*g*

*gaiaa* went

*h*

*huuaa* became, went on, happened; ago .

*i*

*ijaazat (-ii)* permission

*j*

*jaaRaa* frost, shiver

*k*

*kalkattaa* Calcutta
*kamzoor* weak
*kaRuaa* bitter

*l*

*lee jaanaa* to take (something somewhere)

*m*

*manaahii (-ii)* prohibition
*meherbaanii (-ii)* mercy
*mumkin* possible
*mulk* country

*n*

*na-* not

*r*

*rišteedaar* relative

*s*

*samandar* sea, ocean

*t*

*-ee taur-par* by way of . . .
*toh°faa* present
*tuufaan* storm

*x*

*xudaa* God



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 15

## ON THE FARM

### SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| Das: | |
| by you | *aap-nee.* |
| What did you do on your last vacation? | *guzrii čhuTTii-mẽẽ, aap-nee kiaa kiiaa.* |
| Aziz: | |
| I took a trip. | *mãĩ-nee safar kiiaa.* |
| Das: | |
| Really? | *sačmuč?* |
| Did you see any sights (lit. famous spots)? | *kiaa aap-nee kooii mašhuur jaghẽẽ deekhĩĩ?* |
| Aziz: | |
| Yes, I saw a lot of places. | *jii hãã. mãĩ-nee bahot šaher deekhee.* |
| Das: | |
| How did you travel? | *safar kaisee kiiaa.* |
| Aziz: | |
| I travelled by (my) car. | *mãĩ-nee apnii mooTar-see safar kiiaa.* |



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| Das: | |
| you yourself | *aap xud,* |
| to drive | *čalaanaa.* |
| Did you drive the car yourself? | *kiaa aap xud mooTar čalaatee thee?* |
| Aziz: | |
| driver | *čalaaneeuaalaa.* |
| No, a friend of mine drove, because I don't know how to (drive a car). | *jii nahīī. meeree eek doost čalaaneeuaalee thee, kiōō-kee mãī mooTar čalaanaa nahīī jaantaa.* |
| Coming back I tried to drive the car one day. | *uaapas aanee-mẽẽ mãī-nee eek din mooTar čalaanee-kii koošiš kii.* |
| Das: | |
| What happened then? | *too kiaa huuaa.* |
| Aziz: | |
| tree | *daraxt,* |
| to have a collision | *Takkar khaanaa.* |
| We ran into a tree. | *ham-nee daraxt-see Takkar khaaii.* |
| Das: | |
| That's awful. | *afsoos-kii baat.* |
| What did you do then? | *too kiaa kiiaa.* |
| Aziz: | |
| telephone | *Tailiifuun,* |
| mechanic | *kaariigar,* |
| to call. | *bulaanaa.* |
| My friend phoned a mechanic. | *meeree doost-nee Tailiifuun-see kaariigar-koo bulaaiaa.* |
| And he fixed the car. | *aur us-nee mooTar-kii marammat kii.* |



Digitized by Google

interval
to visit
In the meantime my friend and I paid a visit to a farmer.

*darmiiaan,*
*mulaaḳaat karnaa.*
*us darmiiaan māī aur meeree doost-nee eek kisaan-kii mulaaḳaat kii.*

Das:
interesting
Did the farmer show you anything interesting?

*dilčasp.*
*kiaa kisaan-nee aap-koo kooii dilčasp čiizēē dikhaaīī?*

Aziz:
by them
farm
The farmer had two sons who showed us the farm.

*unhõõ-nee*
*kheet*
*kisaan-kee doo beeTee thee, aur unhõõ-nee ham-koo apnaa kheet dikhaaiaa.*

Das:
to hear
I've heard farmers are very poor.

*sunnaa.*
*māī-nee sunaa kee kisaan loog bahot gariib hãī.*

Aziz:
truth
That's true.

*sač*
*uoo sač hai.*

soil
Usually they have little land and less money.

*zamiin*
*aam taur-par un-kee paas thooRii zamiin hai, aur us-see bahot kam paisaa miltaa hai.*

rich
But that farmer was a rich man.

*amiir.*
*leekin uoo kisaan amiir aadmii thaa.*

animal
ox

*jaanuar,*
*bail,*



Digitized by Google

agriculture, farming — *kheetii,*
cow — *gaaee,*
horseback riding — *sauaarii,*
horse — *ghooRaa.*

He had plenty of stock: oxen for plowing, cows for milk, and a horse (to ride on). — *us-kee paas bahot jaanuar thee. kheetii-kee liiee, bail, duudh-kee liiee, gaačē, sauaarii-kee liiee, ghooRaa.*

behind the house — *ghar-kee piičhee,*
the garden — *baag,*
to be grown — *paidaa hoonaa.*

And in the garden behind the house there were all kinds of fruit. — *aur ghar-kee piičhee, baag-mẽẽ, bahot ḳisim-kee phal paidaa hootee thee.*

Das:

wheat — *geehũũ,*
corn — *makaaii,*
to grow something — *paidaa karnaa.*

Did he grow wheat and corn, too? — *kiaa uoo geehũũ aur makaaii bhii paidaa kartaa thaa?*

Aziz:

He said he didn't. — *us-nee kahaa kee nahĩĩ.*

tobacco — *tambaakuu.*

He was raising tobacco. — *uoo tambaakuu paidaa kartaa thaa.*

tea — *čaaee,*
candy — *miTHaaii.*

We drank some tea there and gave the children some candy. — *ham-nee uahãã kuch čaaee pii, aur baččõõ-koo kuch miTHaaii dii.*

Then we went back to the car. — *us-kee baad, ham mooTar-kee paas uaapas gaee.*



Digitized by Google

Das:
Had the mechanic fixed the car in the meantime? *kiaa us darmiiaan, kaariigar-nee mooTar Thiik kii?*

Aziz:
to make *banaanaa.*
Yes, he'd fixed the car and we went on with our trip. *jii hãã. us-nee mooTar banaaii, aur ham-nee apnaa safar phir šuruu kiiaa.*

**Numbers**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| thirty-one | *iktiis.* | thirty-six | *čhattiis.* |
| thirty-two | *battiis.* | thirty-seven | *sãītiis.* |
| thirty-three | *tẽẽtiis.* | thirty-eight | *aRtiis.* |
| thirty-four | *čãũtiis.* | thirty-nine | *untaaliis.* |
| thirty-five | *pãītiis.* | forty | *čaaliis.* |

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. *GAAEE, GAAÕÕ*

*us-kee paas gaaẽẽ thĩī* 'he had cows'

The word for 'cow' is a little irregular. Its plural is simply *gaaẽẽ;* the plural oblique is *gaaiõõ-* (*gaaiõõ-kee saath* 'with the cows'.)

At this point it may be well to mention another irregular noun, namely *gaaõõ* 'village.' Its oblique plural (*gaaõõ* is masculine, so it has no special form for the straight plural) is also *gaaõõ*, in other words, it happens to be the same as all the other case forms of the word.

### B. *-NEEUAALAA*

*meeree eek doost čalaaneeuaalee thee* 'a friend of mine was the driver.'

The oblique case of an infinitive (ending in *-nee*) plus *-uaalaa* (*-ee, -ii*) results in an adjective, meaning



Digitized by Google

'habitually doing . . .': *čalaaneeuaalaa* 'driving habitually, driver,' *miTHaaii beečneeuaalii* 'selling candy, candy salesgirl.' Often words ending in *-neeuaalaa* (*-ee, -ii*) also mean 'about to do such-and-such:' *baahar jaaneeuaalee hoo* 'you are about to go out,' *aaneeuaalii gaaRiiãã* 'incoming trains.'

## C. *PAIDAA*

*bahot kisim-kee phal paidaa hootee thee* 'many kinds of fruit were grown'
*makaaii paidaa kartaa thaa* 'he used to grow corn'

*paidaa* is one of the adjectives that are used with *karnaa* and *hoonaa*. Note that it does not change: with both masculine and feminine, singular and plural it has one and the same form.

## D. TRANSITIVE VERBS

1. The last *Word Study* contained a list of verbs the past tense of which you can use in a sentence without trouble, since, as far as the construction of the sentence is concerned (leaving aside the obvious difference in meaning), it makes no difference whether you say:

*piaasii hai* 'she is thirsty'
or: *piaasii thii* 'she was thirsty'

*ghar aaee-gaa* 'he will come home'
or: *ghar aaiaa* 'he came home'

*mujhee kooT laaoo* 'bring me a coat'
or: *mujhee kooT laaee* 'you brought me a coat'

These verbs were referred to as NEUTER VERBS. Some of them can be preceded by a direct object (as *kooT* in the last example), but most of them cannot.

2. *kiaa aap-nee mašhuur jaghẽẽ deekhīī?* 'did you see the sights?'

*mãī-nee bahot šaher deekhee* 'I saw many cities'
*ham-nee Takkar khaaii* 'we suffered a collision'
*kisaan-nee kuč dilčasp čiizẽẽ dikhaaīī* 'the farmer showed some interesting things'
*unhõõ-nee ham-koo apnaa· kheet dikhaaiaa* 'they showed us their farm'
*us-nee mooTar banaaii* 'he fixed the car'

If you compare:

*mãī jaghẽẽ deekhtaa hũũ* 'I see places'
with: *mãī-nee jaghẽẽ deekhīī* ('by me places were seen') 'I saw places'

or: *mãī mooTar banaataa hũũ* 'I fix the car'
with: *mãī-nee mooTar banaaii* '(by me the car was fixed,) I fixed the car'



Digitized by Google

you can see that with verbs like *deekhnaa* 'to see,' or *banaanaa* 'to make, to fix,' the past tense construction is quite different from the one found with the other tense forms. *deekhaa* (*-ii, -ee, -ĩĩ*) really means 'WAS, WERE seen (BY someone)'; *banaaiaa* (*-ii, -ee, -ĩĩ*), 'was, were made (by . . .)'. This is why in our examples *deekhĩĩ* agrees with *jaghēē*, *deekhee* with *šaher*, *khaaii* with *ṭakkar*, *dikhaaĩĩ* with *čiizēē*, *dikhaaiaa* with *kheet*, *banaaii* with *mooṭar*. That is, past tense forms agree with the object of the action rather than with the agent.

Verbs behaving this way will hereafter be called TRANSITIVE verbs. A verb is either neuter or transitive, much as nouns are either masculines or feminines. From now on, this will be indicated in the finder list by *N* or *T* respectively. (There are a few verbs which can be used either way.) All transitive verbs may be preceded by a direct object: so may a few neuter verbs, as has been pointed out. But this is not essential. Note that for our purpose the term 'transitive' does NOT refer to the presence or absence of a direct object, but only to the change of construction in the past tense.

3. *us-nee kahaa kee nahĩĩ* '(by him was said that "no",) he said no'
   *mãĩ-nee sunaa kee . . .* '(by me was heard that . . .) I heard'

Since a verb is either transitive or neuter, transitive verbs keep their peculiar past tense construction even if the object of the verbal action is not specifically mentioned. In this case the verb takes the masculine singular form ("IT" was said, heard). Compare

   *mãĩ-nee iee baat sunii* 'I heard (about) this affair'
   *mãĩ-nee sunaa kee . . .* 'I heard that . . .'

4. *meeree doost-nee kaariigar-koo bulaaiaa* '(by my friend the mechanic was called), my friend called the mechanic'

In a former *Word Study* it was pointed out that instead of saying "He sees the city (or: the men)," Hindustani often has something like "He sees 'to' the city, 'to' the men:" *šaher-koo* (*aadmiiõõ-koo*) *deekhtaa hai*. From the Hindustani point of view, then, such a sentence does not have a direct object. Consequently, when put into the past tense, the transitive verb has the masculine singular form in *-aa: us-nee šaher-koo* (*aadmiiõõ-koo*) *deekhaa* 'by him "to" the city ("to" the men) "it" was looked.' As in the other tenses, the *koo*-construction is preferred when the object of the action is a person (rather than a thing), and is absolutely necessary when it is a *pronoun* referring to a person. Here are a few examples:

   *meerii bahen kuch gaanaa bajaanaa sunee-gii* 'my sister is going to listen to some music'
   *meerii bahen-nee kuch gaanaa bajaanaa sunaa* 'my sister heard some music'



Digitized by Google

*baччee-koo sun saktii hai* 'she can hear the baby'
*baччee-koo us-nee na-sunaa.* 'she (he) didn't hear the baby'
*mujh-koo sunoo* 'listen to me!'
*us-nee mujh-koo sunaa* 'she (he) listened to me, heard me'
*iee suntii hai* 'she heard it'
*is-koo suntii hai* 'she hears it' or 'she hears him, her'
*us-nee iee sunaa* 'she (he) heard it'
*us-nee is-koo sunaa* 'she (he) heard it' or 'she (he) heard him, her'

5. *safar kaisee kiiaa* '(how was the travel done), how did YOU travel' (for the form, *kiiaa*, see the following comment).

The agent (*mãĩ-nee*, *aap-nee*, etc.) is often not mentioned in the past tense construction, if the context is clear. Examples:

*kiaa kahaa* 'what did YOU say'
*kisii-koo deekhaa?* 'did HE see anyone?'

## E. PAST TENSE FORMS IN *-IIAA*

1. *ham-nee kuch čaaee pii* '(by us some tea was drunk), we drank some tea'

The feminine past tense forms of verb stems ending in . . . *ii* have ONE *ii* (*īĩ*) only:

*kuch paanii piiaa* 'I (she, they . . .) drank some water
*kuch čaaee pii* 'I (. . .) drank some tea'

(With a feminine plural object, the form is *pīĩ*)

2. *mãĩ-nee safar kiiaa* ('by me a travel was done), I took a trip'
*us-nee marammat kii* '(by him repair was done), he repaired'
*baччōō-koo kuch miтhaaii dii* '(to the children some candy was given), we (I, he . . .) gave the children candy'

The past tense of *karnaa* is *kiiaa*, *kii* 'was done,' *kiiee*, *kīĩ* 'were done.'

The past tenses of *leenaa* and *deenaa* are *liiaa*, *lii* (*diiaa*, *dii*) 'was taken (given)'; *liiee*, *līĩ* (*diiee*, *dīĩ*) 'were taken (given).'

Note: Transitive verbs in . . . *aanaa* take the masculine singular past tense form in . . . *aaiaa*, for example *bulaaiaa* 'was called,' just as do neuter verbs in . . . *aanaa*. On the other hand, you will encounter neuter verbs in . . . *iinaa* with feminine forms in simple *ii* (*īĩ*), just like *pii* (*pīĩ*). In general, past tense FORMS of neuter and transitive verbs are not different; only their USE in a sentence is different.



Digitized by Google

## F. *-NEE*

1. *meeree doost-nee bulaaiaa* '(by my friend it was called), my friend called'
   *aap-nee kiaa kiiaa* '(by you what was done), what did you do'
   *ham-nee* 'by us'
   *us-nee* 'by him, her'

*-nee* 'by' is a particle. With a few exceptions (which will be mentioned below) it follows the oblique case form of nouns (which may, in turn, be preceded by adjectives), and pronouns. *-nee.* is used with the past tense ONLY.

2. *mãĩ-nee safar kiiaa* '(by me a travel was done,) I took a trip'
   *unhõõ-nee apnaa kheet dikhaaiaa* '(by them their farm was shown,) they showed their farm'

The following pronouns take special forms before *-nee:*
*mãĩ-nee* 'by me' (vs. *mujh-ʈar, mujh-koo*)
*inhõõ-nee* 'by these, them' (vs. *in-see, in-tak*)
*unhõõ-nee* 'by those, them' (vs. *un-koo, un-kaa*).

## G. *APNAA* WITH THE PAST TENSE

*mãĩ-nee apnii mooTar-see safar kiiaa* '(by me in my car a travel was done,) I travelled in my car'

*unhõõ-nee apnaa kheet dikhaaiaa* '(by them their farm was shown,) they showed their farm'

*ham-nee apnaa safar phir šuruu kiiaa* 'by us our trip was begun again,) we resumed our trip'.

As stated before, *apnaa* is used for "my, your, his, her, its, our, their" if the "owner" implied by these words is the same person as the agent of the verbal action. In most cases, the agent will be the subject of the sentence; but in the examples above, the subjects are *safar* and *kheet*, while the agents are expressed by obliques with *-nee*. Compare:

(*uoo*) *apnee beeTee-koo deekhtee hãĩ* 'They look at their son'
(*unhõõ-nee*) *apnee beeTee-koo deekhaa* 'They looked at their son'.



Digitized by Google

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Here are a number of questions relating to the incident told in the Basic Sentences. Make your answers brief and to the point. The others will speak up if they do not agree with the answer given.

1. *aziiz-nee čhuTTii-mẽẽ kiaa kiiaa.*
2. *kiaa uoo akeelaa thaa?*
3. *us-nee kiaa deekhaa.*
4. *kiaa aap-kaa xiaal hai kee us-nee mazaa kiiaa?*
5. *mooTar čalaaneeuaalaa kaun thaa.*
6. *kiaa aziiz-nee kabhii mooTar čalaaii?*
7. *aziiz-koo mooTar čalaanee-see kiaa huuaa.*
8. *kiaa us-nee xud mooTar-kii marammat kii?*
9. *doost-nee kis-koo bulaaiaa.*
10. *too unhõõ-nee kis-kii mulaaḳaat kii.*
11. *unhõõ-nee kheel-mẽẽ kiaa deekhaa.*
12. *kheel-mẽẽ kiaa paidaa hootaa thaa.*
13. *kiaa sač hai kee hindustaan-mẽẽ kisaan loog bahot gariib hãĩ?*
14. *us kisaan-kee paas kis ḳisim-kee jaanuar thee.*
15. *bail kis-kee liiee hãĩ.*
16. *kiaa aziiz-nee uahãã kuch duudh piiaa?*
17. *baaḡ kahãã thaa.*
18. *kiaa hindustaan-mẽẽ bahot geehũũ paidaa hootaa hai?*
19. *amriikaa-mẽẽ kiaa kisaan loog makaaii paidaa kartee hãĩ?*
20. *kiaa aap jaantee hãĩ kee hindustaan-mẽẽ geehũũ kahãã paidaa hootaa hai?*
21. *kiaa aap-kaa xiaal hai kee mooTar banaanaa bahot muškil hai?*

2. Give the Hindustani for the following sentences:

1. The shopkeeper sold a book.
2. They ate meat.
3. We saw many buildings.
4. The boy sent a letter.
5. She took off her shoes.
6. I gave him the money.
7. He asked me a question.
8. My sister wrote a book.
9. My sister read the newspaper.
10. He took the oranges.
11. The mechanic fixed the electric light.
12. His mother prepared the food.
13. He took the pomegranates.
14. The girl washed the clothes.
15. I saw him.
16. They drank water.
17. What did you do?
18. My brother left his coat.
19. We bought a car.
20. When did you call him?



Digitized by Google

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Paul in search of his buddies.

Paul: *bhaaii; kiaa tum hindustaanii booltee hoo?*

*kisaan: zaruur janaab; aap kiaa čaahᵉtee hãĩ.*

Paul: *mujh-koo bataaiiee, kee kiaa aaj, tum-nee, kooii amriikan sipaahii deekhee.*

*kisaan: jii hãã janaab. aaj subaa-koo mãĩ-nee tiin čaar sipaahiiõõ-koo deekhaa.*

Paul: *kiaa uoo abhii-tak is gaaõõ-mẽẽ hãĩ?*

*kisaan: nahĩĩ. uoo mooTar-see šaher-koo gaee.*
*kiaa aap un-koo deekhnaa čaahᵉtee hãĩ?*

Paul: *jii hãã. meeraa xiaal hai kee uoo meeree doost hãĩ.*
*ham sab hauaaii jahaaz-see giree.*[1]

*kisaan: sačmuč? kis uajee-see.*

Paul: *mãĩ tum-koo bataa nahĩĩ saktaa.*
*uoo fauj-kii baat hai.*

*kisaan: too mooTar-see šaher-koo jaaiiee.*
*uahãã aap šaaed apnee doostõõ-see mil saktee hãĩ.*
*xudaa haafiz.*

2. Mr. Smith talks to a peasant.

Smith: *salaam.*

*kisaan: salaam janaab;*

Smith: *kiaa iee tumhaarii zamiin hai?*

*kisaan: jii hãã. iee meerii xamiin hai.*

Smith: *tum iahãã kiaa paidaa kartee hoo.*

*kisaan: daaĩĩ taraf geehũũ paidaa hootaa hai, aur gharkee piičhee anaar-kee daraxt hãĩ.*

Smith: *kiaa mãĩ kuch phal xariid saktaa hũũ?*

*kisaan: ham uoo xud khaatee hãĩ. leekin aap-koo xušii-see kuch dũũ-gaa.*

Smith: *meherbaanii.*
*tumhaaree paas, kitnee jaanuar hãĩ.*

*kisaan: doo bail kheetii-kee liiee, aur eek gaaee duudh-kee liiee.*

Smith: *kooii ghooRaa nahĩĩ?*

*kisaan: jii nahĩĩ janaab. ghooRaa amiir aadmiiõõ-kee liiee hai.*
*aur mãĩ sirf ġariib aadmii hũũ.*

Smith: *kiaa tumhaaree bačče bhii kisaan hãĩ?*

*kisaan: meeree doo beeTee kaarxaanee-mẽẽ kaam kartee hãĩ.*
*un-koo bahot paisaa miltaa hai.*

[1] 'were dropped'.



Digitized by Google

*sirf meeree baap aur mãĩ is kheet-mẽẽ kaam kartee hãĩ.*

Smith: *kiaa tumhaaraa kaam bahot saxt hai?*

*kisaan: saxt hai. leekin mujh-koo pasand hai.*

3. A trip to New York.

Paul: *kal raat-mẽẽ mãĩ aur meeree doost nuuiaark-koo gaee.*

Das: *aap-nee kiaa kiiaa.*

Paul: *pahᵉlee, ham hindustaanii khaanee-kii dukaan-koo gaee, aur uahãã ham-nee hindustaanii khaanaa khaaiaa.*

Das: *khaanee-kee saath kiaa piiaa.*

Paul: *ham-nee duudh piiaa.*
*khaanaa bahot aččhaa thaa.*

Das: *us-kee baad aap-nee kiaa kiiaa.*

Paul: *meeree doost kuch gaanaa sunnaa čaahᵉtee thee.*
*is liiee ham naaTak-koo gaee.*

Das: *mãĩ samajhtaa hũũ, kee naaTak-kee TikiT-kaa milnaa bahot muškil hai.*

Paul: *uoo sač hai. leekin sipaahiiõõ-kee liiee muškil nahĩĩ.*

4. A soldier discusses his plans for after the war.

*laRaaii jiitnee-kee baad, mãĩ eek čhooTee gaaõõ-mẽẽ kuch zamiin xariidũũ-gaa aur kheet-kaa kaam šuruu karũũ-gaa, kiõõ-kee mujh-koo is-mẽẽ bahot dilčaspii hai. mãĩ amiir aadmii nahĩĩ, leekin thooRaa paisaa hai. šaaed eek gaaee aur bail aur ghooRaa xariidũũ.*

*phir makaaii aur geehũũ paidaa karnee-kii koošiš karũũ-gaa. ghooRee-par sauaarii bhii kar saktaa hũũ.*

*dhiiree dhiiree eek ghar bhii apnee haath-see kheet-kee piičhee banaũũ-gaa.*

*kaariigarõõ-koo paisaa deenee-kii zaruurat nahĩĩ.*

*phir šaadii karũũ-gaa.*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. Take any one of the incidents in the *Basic Sentences* or *Conversations* of the previous Units (buying fruit for a sick friend, taking a room in a hotel, etc.) and tell it as something that has happened to you sometime in the past.

   b. You are interviewing an applicant for a job—you need a clerk. After he has tried to convince you of his qualifications, you make inquiries about him among the people he has given as references. In turn you visit the applicant's brother, friend, former teacher, and former employer. Inquire about his character, his abilities, his past life, etc.

   c. After the war is over, you want to go and live on a ranch in California and grow oranges. Tell one of your friends about your plan and ask him what he thinks of it. He'll try to discourage you by telling you about the trouble one of his friends had attempting to grow oranges.

   d. Ask one of your friends what he did last weekend —where he went, with whom, what he did, etc.

2. Ask questions on the *Listening In* and answer them. Look at Sections E.2 of Units 13 and 14, and Section C.1 of this Unit.

### FINDER LIST

*a*

*amiir* — rich, distinguished
*aRtiis* — thirty-eight

*b*

*baag* — garden
*bail* — ox
*banaanaa* (T) — to make, to fix
*battiis* — thirty-two
*bulaanaa* (T) — to call

*č*

*čaaee* (*-ii*) — tea
*čaalis* — forty
*čalaanaa* (T) — to make go, to drive
*čalaaneeuaalaa* — driver
*čãũtiis* — thirty-four
*čhattiis* — thirty-six

*d*

*daraxt* — tree
*darmiiaan* — interval
*dilčasp* — interesting



Digitized by Google

*g*

*gaaee* (*-ii*) cow
*geehūū* wheat
*ghooRaa* horse

*i*

*iktiis* thirty-one

*j*

*jaanuar* animal

*k*

*kaariigar* mechanic
*kheet* field, farm
*kheetii* (*-ii*) agriculture, farming

*m*

*makaaii* (*-ii*) corn
*miThaaii* (*-ii*) candy
*mulaaḳaat* (*-ii*) visit
*mulaaḳaat karnaa* to visit

*n*

*-nee* by

*p*

*paidaa* "existing"
*paidaa hoonaa* to become existing,
to be created,
to be grown
*paidaa karnaa* to make existing,
to create,
to grow (something)
*p̃aītiis* thirty-five
*piichee* in the rear, behind
*-ee piichee* behind . . .

*s*

*sač* truth
*sačmuč* really?
*sãītiis* thirty-seven
*sauaarii* (*-ii*) horseback riding
*sunnaa* (T) to hear

*t*

*tambaakuu* tobacco
*tẽẽtiis* thirty-three

*T*

*Tailiifuun* telephone
*Takkar* (*-ii*) collision, bump

*u*

*unhõõ-* see *Word Study*
*untaaliis* thirty-nine

*x*

*xud* self

*z*

*zamiin* (*-ii*) ground, soil, land



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 16

## AN UNEXPECTED GUEST

### SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| Das: | |
| to seem | *maaluum hoonaa.* |
| You seem very tired. | *tum bahot thakee maaluum hootee hoo.* |
| What's the matter? | *kiaa takliif hai.* |
| Aziz: | |
| a man who had come | *aaiaa huaa aadmii.* |
| A man (who had come) from America has been staying for some time at my house. | *eek amriikaa-see aaiaa huuaa aadmii kuch din meeree ghar-mẽẽ rahaa.* |
| Das: | |
| grief | *ranj.* |
| That's nothing to be sad about. | *uoo too ranj-kii baat nahĩĩ.* |
| Who is he? | *uoo kaun hai.* |
| Aziz: | |
| He's an American soldier. | *uoo amriikan sipaahii hai.* |
| Das: | |
| Had you known him [before]? | *kiaa tum us-koo jaantee thee?* |



Digitized by Google

Aziz:

address

No, but in America he met some Hindus and they gave him my address.

*pataa.*

*nahĩĩ. leekin amriikaa-mẽẽ uoo kooii hindustaanii loogõõ-koo milaa, aur unhõõ-nee meeraa pataa diiaa.*

Das:

What happened then?

*too kiaa huuaa.*

heart

A few days ago, when my servant told me that an English speaking man was here, I was very glad (in my heart) . . .

*dil.*

*kuch din guzree, jab meeree naukar-nee kahaa kee eek angreezii boolneeuaalaa aadmii iahãã thaa, mãĩ dil-mẽẽ bahot xuš huuaa, . . .*

expectation

who

England

. . . because I was expecting a friend (who had come) from England.

*intezaar,*

*joo,*

*inglistaan,*

*. . . kiõõ-kee mãĩ apnee eek doost-kaa, joo inglistaan-see aaiaa, intezaar kartaa thaa.*

I went inside right away and met this man.

*jaldii-see mãĩ andar gaiaa aur is aadmii-koo milaa.*

according to custom

began to stay

And from that day, naturally, he's lived with us.

*dastuur-kee mutaabiq,*

*rahᵉnee lagaa.*

*aur is din-see, dastuur-kee mutaabiq, uoo hamaaree saath rahᵉnee lagaa.*

Das:

to complain

What are you complaining about?

*šikaaet karnaa.*

*too šikaaet kiõõ kar rahee hoo.*

Aziz:

socks

hat

*moozaa,*

*Toopii,*



Digitized by Google

to get lost — *khoo jaanaa,*
uniform — *uardii,*
he was wearing — *pahᵉnee huuee thaa,*
hole — *čheed.*

Listen: his socks were all worn out, he'd lost his hat, and there was a big hole in the uniform he was wearing. — *suniiee. us-kee moozee bilkul phaTee thee, us-kii Toopii khoo gaii, aur joo uardii uoo pahᵉnee huuee thaa us-mẽẽ baRaa čheed thaa.*

Das:

tailor — *darzii.*

That doesn't matter; the tailor'll fix all that. — *iee too kuč̌h baat nahĩĩ. darzii uoo sab Thiik kar dee-gaa.*

Aziz:

laundryman — *dhoobii,*
barber — *hajjaam,*

Yes, I took him to the tailor, and after that we went to the laundryman and to the barbershop. — *jii hãã. mãĩ us-koo darzii-kee paas lee gaiaa, aur us-kee baad ham dhoobii aur hajjaam-kii dukaan-koo gaee.*

Das:

Then what happened? — *phir kiaa huuaa.*

Aziz:

pants — *patluun,*
to press — *istrii karnaa.*

The laundryman pressed my friend's pants . . . — *dhoobii-nee meeree doost-kii patluun istrii kii, . . .*

in which shirt — *jis ḳamiiz-mẽẽ,*
the stain — *daaġ,*
well — *aččhii taraa,*
to take out — *nikaalnaa.*



Digitized by Google

. . . and washed (well) his shirt with the stain on it and got the stain out.

. . . *aur jis ķamiiz-mẽẽ daaġ thaa, us-koo aččhii taraa dhoo-kar, daaġ nikaalaa.*

to cut
head
The barber cut his hair and gave him a shampoo.

*kaaTnaa,*
*sir.*
*hajjaam-nee us-kee baal kaaTee aur sir dhooiaa.*

Das:
bad thing
What's so bad about that?

*harj* or *haraj.*
*too is-mẽẽ kiaa haraj hai.*

Aziz:
He tried to talk to all the girls he saw.

*jin jauaan laRkiiõõ-koo us-nee deekhaa, un-see baatčiit karnee-kii koošiš kii.*

with pleasure
sharp *or* fast
custom
stomach
pain
He sat down and ate up a lot of Hindu food, but he wasn't used to [such] hot food and afterwards he had a stomach-ache.

*šauķ-see,*
*teez,*
*aadat,*
*peeT,*
*dard.*
*uoo hindustaanii khaanaa bahot šauķ-see khaanee lagaa, leekin us-koo teez khaanee-kii aadat na-thii, aur us-kee baad, peeT-mẽẽ dard šuruu huuaa.*

bus
And he drove his car so fast that we ran into a bus yesterday.

*bas.*
*aur us-nee apnii mooTar aisii teez čalaaii, kee kal ham-nee bas-see Takkar khaaii.*

Das:
by which people?
Do you know who gave him your address?

*kin loogõõ-nee.*
*kiaa tum jaantee hoo, kee us-koo kin loogõõ-nee aap-kaa pataa diiaa?*



Digitized by Google

Aziz:
(those) by whom *jinhõõ-nee.*
No, but who [ever] gave him my name isn't any friend of mine. *jii nahĩĩ. leekin jinhõõ-nee us-koo meeraa naam bataaiaa, uoo meeree doost nahĩĩ.*

**Numbers**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| forty-one | *iktaalis,* | forty-six | *čhaiaaliis,* |
| forty-two | *baiaaliis,* | forty-seven | *sãĩtaaliis,* |
| forty-three | *teetaaliis,* | forty-eight | *aʀtaaliis,* |
| forty-four | *čauaaliis,* | forty-nine | *unčaas,* |
| forty-five | *pãĩtaaliis,* | fifty | *pačaas.* |

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. OBLIQUE OF QUESTION PRONOUN

*kiaa tum jaantee hoo kee us-koo kin loogõõ-nee aap-kaa pataa diiaa?* 'Do you know (this:) by which people was your address given to him, do you know which persons gave him your address?'

The oblique plural form corresponding to the oblique singular *kis* (as in *kis-kaa* 'whose?', *kis aadmii-see* 'with which man') is *kin.* Other examples:

*kin čiizõõ-mẽẽ* 'in which things'
*kin-kee saamaan-mẽẽ* 'in whose (implying more than one owner) baggage'

However, when used immediately before *-nee* 'by' (that is, when NOT describing a following noun like *loogõõ,* etc.),



Digitized by Google

the form is *kinhõõ-* rather than *kin*. This is much like *unhõõ-nee*, *inhõõ-nee* 'by them (was . . . done)' vs. *un loogõõ-nee* 'by those people . . .', *in laRkiiõõ-nee* 'by these girls . . .', *un-par* 'on them', *in kamrõõ-mee* 'in these rooms'. Compare:

*uoo kinhõõ-nee kiiaa* 'who (that is, which ones) did it?'

*aap-kee kin doostõõ-nee kahaa* 'which friend of yours (which one of your friends) said so?'

*paisaa kin-koo milee-gaa* 'who (that is, which ones) will get the money?'

## B. RELATIVE PRONOUN

1. *eek doost joo inglistaan-see aaiaa thaa* 'a friend who had come from England'

*joo uardii uoo pahᵉnee huuee thaa us-mẽẽ baRaa čheed thaa* '(which uniform he wore, in that there was a big hole,) there was a big hole in the uniform he was wearing'

The Hindustani equivalent of the English 'who' or 'which' or 'that' when used in order to connect two clauses of a sentence (rather than in questions) will be referred to as the RELATIVE pronoun. Its straight case form, for both singular and plural, is *joo*. Here are a few more examples:

*xabrẽẽ joo kal milĩĩ* 'the news which I got yesterday'

*ThanDii-kaa kooT joo kal pahᵉnũũ-gaa* 'the winter coat which I will wear tomorrow'

*baRii khiRkii joo duur-see deekhii* 'the large window which I (she, they . . .) saw from a distance'

2. *jis ḳamiiz-mee daaḡ thaa us-koo ačchii taraa dhoo-kar* . . . '(in which shirt there was a stain, after washing that well, he . . .) after washing well the shirt in which there was a stain . . .'

*jin jauaan laRkiiõõ-koo us-nee deekhaa un-see baatčiit karnee-kii koošiš kii* '(which young girls he saw, with those he tried to talk,) he tried to talk to the girls he saw'



Digitized by Google

The oblique case forms of the relative pronoun are *jis* for the singular, and *jin* for the plural (with one exception noted under 3.). Other examples:

*iee sipaahii, jis-koo mãĩ-nee paisaa diiaa* 'this soldier here to whom I gave money'

*iee sipaahii loog, jin-koo deekhaa* 'these soldiers here at whom they (I, you . . .) looked'

*meeraa čhooTaa bhaaii, jis-kii biiuii kalkattee-see aaii hai* 'my younger brother whose wife is ("has come") from Calcutta'

*tumhaaree uaaldain, jin-kee ghar-mẽẽ mai rahᵉtaa thaa* 'your parents in whose house I stayed'

*aap-kii biimaarii, jis-kii uajaa-see baahar na-jaa sakee, kiaa uoo saxt thii?* 'Was your sickness on account of which you could not go out severe? Was it a bad illness on account of which you couldn't go out?'

*iee meeree kaalee juutee hãĩ, jin-kee liiee* (or: *jin-kee*) *nau rupaee diiee* 'these are my black shoes for which (I) paid nine rupees'

Note that the normal English equivalent of *jis-* (*jin-*)*kaa* (*-kee, -kii*) is 'whose'.

3. Before *-nee* 'by' the plural oblique case of the relative pronoun (if NOT describing a following noun) is *jinhõõ: jinhõõ-nee* 'by whom (plural) (was . . . done)'.

*us-kaa beeTaa jis-nee kiiaa* 'his son who did it' (singular)

*jin laRkõõ-nee iskuul jaanaa šuruu na-kiiaa* 'the boys who did not start going to school' (plural describing a following noun)

*hamaaree doost jinhõõ-nee us-koo dikhaaiaa* 'our friend, who had pointed her out (to us)' (polite plural)



Digitized by Google

*meerii mãã jinhõõ-nee kitaab paRhii* 'my mother who read the book' (polite plural)

*tumhaarii doo bahᵉnõõ-koo milaa jinhõõ-nee kahaa kee* . . . 'I met your two sisters who said that . . .' (plural)

4. Familiarize yourselves with the phrases cited at the beginning of No. 2, and the second phrase under No. 1 of this *Comment*. Where English has expressions like 'the uniform (which) he was wearing,' 'the shirt in which there was a stain', 'the girls (whom) he saw', Hindustani prefers: 'which uniform he wore, that (uniform) . . .', 'in which shirt there was a stain, that (shirt) . . .', 'at which girls he looked, to those . . .' In other words, the relative pronoun is very frequently used describing a following noun. The noun itself is taken up later on by *uoo*, *us-*, *un-*, *unhõõ-nee*, etc.

Note: There is sometimes a slight difference in meaning between

*axbaar joo kal milaa uoo* . . . 'the paper, which (by the way) came yesterday, . . .'

*joo axbaar kal milaa uoo* . . . 'the (particular) paper that came yesterday, . . .'

*meeree beeTee jinhõõ-nee iskuul jaanaa šuruu kiiaa uoo* . . . 'my sons, who (incidentally) started going to school, . . .'

*jin meeree beeTõõ-nee iskuul jaanaa šuruu kiiaa uoo* . . . 'those of my sons who started going to school'.

5. You will find it useful to have some of the pronoun forms put together in the form of a chart:

| | QUESTION | RELATIVE |
|---|---|---|
| *iee*, *uoo* 'he (etc.)' | *kaun* 'who'<br>*kiaa* 'what' | *joo* 'who, which, that' |
| *is-koo* | *kis-koo* | *jis-koo* |
| *us-kaa* | *kis-kaa* | *jis-kaa* |



Digitized by Google

| | QUESTION | RELATIVE |
|---|---|---|
| *is liiee* | *kis-liiee* | *jis liiee* |
| *us-nee* | *kis-nee* | *jis-nee* |
| *is-kii baabat* | *kis-kii baabat* | *jis-kii baabat* |
| *uoo baat* | *kiaa (kaun) baat* | *joo baat* |
| *us laʀkee-nee* | *kis beeʈee-nee* | *jis sipaahii-nee* |
| *iee, uoo* 'they' | *kaun* 'who (which ones)?' | *joo* 'who, etc.' (pl.) |
| *un-par* | *kin-par* | *jin-see* |
| *in-kii dukaan* | *kin-kii dukaan* | *jin-kii dukaan* |
| *un-kee ḳariib* | *kin-kee paas* | *jin-kee saath* |
| *inhõõ-nee* | *kinhõõ-nee* | *jinhõõ-nee* |
| *uoo saʀkẽẽ* | *(kaun saʀkẽẽ)* | *joo saʀkẽẽ* |
| *un šahᵉrõõ-mẽẽ* | *kin šahᵉrõõ-see* | *jin šahᵉrõõ-koo* |
| *in aurtõõ-nee* | *kin aurtõõ-nee* | *jin aurtõõ-nee* |

6. Remember the distinction between

*uoo dikhaaũũ-gaa* 'I will point IT out'; *kiaa liiaa* 'WHAT did you (etc.) take'
*us-koo dikhaaũũ-gaa* 'I will point HIM, HER (or: it) out';
*kis-koo liiaa* 'WHOM (or: what) did you (etc.) take'

The same, of course, holds good for

*joo deekhaa uoo*, 'what she (etc.) saw, (that . . .'
*jis-koo deekhaa uoo* 'whom (*or*: what) they (etc.) saw, (that . . .'

## C. PAST TENSE FORM PLUS VERB "TO BE"

*inglistaan-see aaiaa thaa* 'he had come from England, he was from England'



Digitized by Google

Used by itself, the past tense form refers to an event in the past:

*inglistaan-see aaiaa* 'he came from England'

Past tense forms, however, may also be followed by the verb 'to be':

*inglistaan-see aaiaa hai* 'he has come from England; he is from England'
*inglistaan-see aaee thee* 'they had come from England; they were from England'

These combinations, then, refer to a state of affairs, to the result of an event rather than the event itself: 'I HAVE COME from America; now I AM here', 'I had COME from America; then something happened'. Compare, for instance:

*šaher jaatee hãĩ* 'they go to the city'
*šaher gaee* 'they went to the city'
*šaher jaatee thee* 'they went (kept going) . . .'
*šaher jaa rahee hãĩ* 'they are just going . . .'
*šaher jaa rahee thee* 'they were just going . . .'
*šaher gaee hãĩ* 'they are away in town'
*šaher gaee thee* 'they had gone to town, were (away) in town'

Note that the English equivalent of a phrase like *gaiaa hai* is often a so-called English present tense ('IS away . . .), the one of such a phrase as *gaiaa thaa* is a 'simple past' or 'pluperfect' ('WAS away' or 'HAD GONE away').

Transitive verbs, of course, must have their peculiar *-nee*-construction wherever the past tense form is involved (i.e. regardless of whether *hũũ*, *hai*, *hãĩ*, *thaa*, etc. follow):

*kitaab paRhii hai* 'I (etc.) have read the book; (implying: now I know it)'
*unhõõ-nee kahaa thaa* 'They had said it (already; so that it was known).

If followed by a form of the verb 'to be', the past tense form has NO special ending for the feminine plural:

*meerii mãã amriikaa-see aaii hãĩ* 'my mother is from America (polite plural)'
*mãĩ-nee kitaabčč paRhii thĩĩ* 'I had read the books'.



Digitized by Google

## D. *IIUUAA* AFTER PARTICIPLES

*eek amriikaa-see aaiaa huuaa aadmii* 'a man (who has) come from America'

Any present participle or past tense form can be made to describe a following noun by adding *huuaa* (*-ee, -ii*):

*khaatii huuii gaaee* 'an eating cow'
*booltee huuee loog* 'speaking people; persons who speak'
*khaaiaa huuaa khaanaa* 'the eaten food, the food that had been eaten'

Neither the present participle or past tense form nor the *huuaa*, in this case, has a special *-ĩĩ*-form for the feminine plural:

*piitii huuii aurtẽẽ* 'the drinking women'
*bataaii huuii baatẽẽ* 'the things (that were) told'

Note, in the past tense examples, the difference between neuter (*aanaa*) and transitive (*khaanaa, bataanaa*). The former agree with the agent, the latter, with the object of the action.

Note, also, that you have by now encountered *huuaa* (*-ee, -ii*) in three different phrases, with entirely different English equivalents:

*biimaar huuaa* 'he (etc.) BECAME (*or* WAS) sick'
*eek raat huuii* 'one night AGO'
*eek amriikaa-see aaiaa huuaa aadmii* 'a man (hailING) from America'

(The phrase *joo uardii pahᵉnee huuee thaa* will be discussed later.)



Digitized by Google

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Here are some more questions on the incident in the *Basic Sentences;* answer them with complete sentences, but keep your answer brief and to the point.

1. *aziiz-kaa meh$^{e}$maan kahãã-see aaiaa thaa.*
2. *kiaa uoo us-kaa intezaar kartaa thaa?*
3. *is meh$^{e}$maan-kaa peešaa kiaa thaa.*
4. *kiaa aziiz us-koo jaantee thee?*
5. *sipaahii-koo aziiz-kaa pataa kaisee milaa.*
6. *kiaa uoo sipaahii hindustaanii booltaa thaa?*
7. *aziiz kis-kaa intezaar kartaa thaa.*
8. *sipaahii kis uajee-see aziiz-kee saath rah$^{e}$taa thaa.*
9. *kiaa aziiz sipaahii aanee-see dil-mee bahot xuš thaa?*
10. *kiaa sipaahii-kee paas Toopii thii?*
11. *kiaa us-kii uardii bahot ačchii thii?*
12. *uardii kis-nee Thiik kii.*
13. *dhoobii-nee sipaahii-kee liiee kiaa kiiaa.*
14. *kiaa sipaahii-koo naii ķamiiz xariidnee-kii zaruurat thii?*
15. *hajjaam-nee kiaa kiiaa.*
16. *hindustaanii khaanaa khaanee-see sipaahii-koo kiiaa huuaa.*
17. *kiaa uoo jauaan laRkiiõõ-koo pasand kartaa thaa?*
18. *sipaahii mooTar kaisee čalaataa thaa.*
19. *kiaa aziiz jaantaa thaa kee us-kaa pataa kin loogõõ-nee sipaahii-koo diiaa?*
20. *un loogõõ-kii baabat aziiz-nee kiaa kahaa.*

2. Say the following in Hindustani:

1. The book I read isn't very good.
2. The house in which I was living was on the bank of the river.
3. The man who lives in that house is a doctor.
4. The man who wrote this letter lives in Calcutta.
5. The people who bought this house had come from America.
6. Those who ate this food got very ill.
7. Who sent this letter?
8. In which shirt is there a hole?
9. He doesn't know who lives there.
10. He told me who sold the table.



Digitized by Google

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Clothes and Laundry.

*naukar:* *dhoobii iahãã hai.*
*kiaa kuch mailee kapRee hãĩ?*

Mrs. Potter: *meeree xaauind-koo bulaaoo.*
*mãĩ samajhtii hũũ, kee un-kee paas bahot mailee kapRee hai.*

*naukar:* Potter *saaheb; kiaa aap-kee paas kuch mailee kapRee hãĩ?*

Potter: *kiaa dhoobii iahãã hai?*
*too us-koo meerii patluun istrii karnee-kee liiee doo.*
*aur meeree moozee bhii lee jaaoo. un-mẽẽ bahot čheed hãĩ.*
*kiaa tum jaantee hoo kee dhoobii uoo Thiik kar saktaa hai?*

*naukar:* *meeraa xiaal hai janaab.*

Potter: *dhoobii-koo kahoo kee iee kapRee aččhii taraa dhooee, kiõõ-kee joo uardii guzree haftee us-nee saaf kii, us-mẽẽ abhii-tak daag hai.*

*naukar:* *aččhaa janaab.*
*mai uardii angreezii darzii-kee paas lee jaaũũ-gaa.*
*uoo daag nikaal saktaa hai.*

2. Mr. Potter has sent for the doctor.

*DaakTar:* *aadaab arz janaab.*
*aap-koo kiaa takliif hai.*

Potter: *mãĩ nahĩĩ jaantaa.*
*leekin mãĩ bahot biimaar maaluum hootaa hũũ*
*raat-koo mãĩ soo nahii saktaa, aur din-mẽ aisaa thakaa hũũ, kee kuch kaam nahĩĩ ka saktaa.*

*DaakTar:* *kiaa aap-kee sir-mẽẽ dard hai?*
*šaaed aap ziaadaa paRhtee hãĩ.*

Potter: *meeree sir-mẽẽ dard hai, aur peeT-mẽẽ bhi bahot takliif hai.*

*DaakTar:* *aap kis kisim-kaa khaanaa khaatee hãĩ.*
*kiaa aap miThaaii bahot pasand kartee hãĩ?*

Potter: *jii hãã janaab; mãĩ miThaaii bahot pasand kartaa hũũ,*
*aur guzree haftee mãĩ-nee bahot miThaai khaaii, kiõõ-kee meeree eek rišteedaa hindustaan-see uaapas aace, aur apnee saath hindustaanii miThaaii laaee.*

*DaakTar:* *too isii*[1] *liiee aap-kee peeT-mee dard hai.*

[1] That's exactly why . . .



Digitized by Google

*aap-koo hindustaanii miTHaaii khaanee-kii aadat nahīī.*

Potter: *iee sač hai.*
*too māī kiaa karũũ.*

DAAKTAR: *kuch din-tak sirf rooTii čaaual aur narangiiãã khaaiiee, aur us-kee saath duudh piijiiee.*
*māī aap-koo kuch soonee-kii dauaaii dũũ-gaa.*
*too aap jaldii THiik hõõ-gee.*

Potter: *mujh-koo dauaaii kab milee-gii.*

DAAKTAR: *māī aap-koo bheejũũ-gaa.*
*aap-kaa pataa kiaa hai.*

Potter: *māī raael* ('Royal') ***hooTal-mẽẽ rahᵉtaa hũũ.***

DAAKTAR: *aačhaa.*
*aap-koo raat hoonee-kee* ***pahᵉlee dauaaii mileegii.***

Potter: *šukriiaa janaab;*
*xudaa haafiz.*

3. Mr. Potter tries to find his way around.

Potter: *sigreT liijiiee janaab.*
*kiaa aap is šaher-kee rahᵉneeuaalee hãī?*

Aziz: *meherbaanii. mujh-koo tambaakuu piineeˡ-kii aadat nahīī, aur aaj-kal sigreT-kaa milnaa bhii bahot muškil hai.*

Potter: *iee šaher kiaa bahot baRaa hai?*
*kiaa iahãã kooii aččhaa hooTal hai?*
*māī čhuTTii-par hũũ, aur kuch din iahãã THairnaa čaahᵉtaa hũũ.*

Aziz: *hooTal too hai², leekin šaaed aap-koo iahãã-kii aab-o-hauaa pasand na-hoo-gii.*
*kiõõ-kee kabhii leez dhuup hai aur kabhii zoor-kii baariš.*

Potter: *is šaher-mẽẽ čiizõõ-kii ķiimat bahot māhegii too nahīī.*

Aziz: *iahãã darzii, dhoobii, hajjaam, uaşairaa -kii dukaanẽẽ bahot kam hãī. is liiee kooii šikaaet nahīī karlaa.*

Potter: *kiaa aaj šaam-koo aap meeree saath khaanaa khaanee -kee liiee aa saktee hãī?*

Aziz: *is-mẽẽ kooii haraj nahīī, leekin aap iahaãã ajnabii hãī, aur dastuur-kee mutaabiķ pahᵉlee aap meeree mehᵉmaan hõõ. māī apnaa pataa deetaa hũũ. čhai bajee-uaalee bas-mẽẽ zaruur. aaiiee.*

Potter: *šauķ-see janaab.*
*xudaa haafiz.*

¹ 'to smoke'.
² 'there is one all right'.



Digitized by Google

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. You are trying to get a job as a newspaper correspondent. Tell the editor who is interviewing you all about your past experience: the trips, the books you've written, etc. Since you're trying to qualify as an expert on India, the editor will ask you a number of questions testing your knowledge of India in general and your own experiences there in particular.
   b. You're on a train and discover that you've lost your ticket. Try to settle matters with the conductor, but he will tell you to get off at the next station and ask the ticket seller there what is to be done. You don't have enough money with you to pay the fare. Try to find some way out. (Call up a friend and ask him for money, leave your baggage behind as security, etc.)
   c. You've just come home on leave. The family takes one good look at you and tells you to get yourself fixed up, for you can't walk around like that. So you go to town, get a haircut and a shampoo, get all your clothes cleaned and repaired, and buy whatever new clothes you need.

2. Ask questions on the *Listening In* and answer them. Compare Sections E.2 of Units 13 and 14, and Section C.1 of Units 15 and 16.

### FINDER LIST

*a*

*aadat (-ii)* habit
*aRtaaliis* forty-eight

*b*

*baiaaliis* forty-two
*bas (-ii)* bus

*č*

*čauaaliis* forty-four
*čhaiaaliis* forty-six
*čheed* hole

*d*

*daag* stain
*dard* pain
*dard karnaa* to hurt
*darzii* tailor
*dastuur* custom
*dhoobii* laundryman
*dil* heart, mind, soul

*h*

*hajjaam* barber
*har(a)j* bad thing



Digitized by Google

*i*

*iklaaliis* forty-one
*inglistaan* England
*intezaar* expectation
*-aa intezaar karnaa* to wait for . . .
*istrii (-ii)* iron
*istrii karnaa* to press

*j*

*joo, jin, jinhõõ-, jis* see *Word Study*

*k*

*kaaTnaa* (T) to cut
*khoonaa* (T) to lose
*khoo jaanaa* to get lost
*kin* see *Word Study*

*ḳ*

*ḳamiiz (-ii)* shirt

*m*

*maaluum hoonaa* to seem
*moozaa* sock, stocking
*-ee mutaabiḳ* according, conforming to . . .

*n*

*nikaalnaa* (T) to take out

*p*

*pačaas* fifty
*pãĩtaaliis* forty-five
*pataa* address
*patluun (-ii)* pants
*peeT* stomach

*r*

*ranj* grief, sorrow

*s*

*sãĩtaaliis* forty-seven
*sir* head

*š*

*šauḳ (-ii)* pleasure
*šikaaet (-ii)* complaint
*šikaaet karnaa* to complain

*t*

*teetaaliis* forty-three
*teez* sharp, fast, seasoned (hot)

*T*

*Toopii (-ii)* hat

*u*

*uardii (-ii)* uniform
*unčaas* forty-nine



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 17

## IN THE STORE

### SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| Ram: | |
| the salesclerk | *dukaanuaalaa* |
| Are you the clerk? | *kiaa tum dukaanuaalee hoo?* |
| Das: | |
| Yes sir, what would you like? | *jii hãã hanaab. aap-koo kiaa xuaahiš hai.* |
| Ram: | |
| handkerchief | *rumaal,* |
| to get torn | *phaT jaanaa.* |
| Last month I bought some handkerchiefs here and some of'em've gotten torn. | *guzree mahiinee mãĩ-nee iahãã kuch rumaal xariidee, aur un-mẽẽ-see kooii kooii phaT gaee hãĩ.* |
| to give in exchange | *badlii deenaa.* |
| I want to exchange'em. | *mãĩ uoo badlii deenaa čaah$^{e}$taa hãũ.* |
| Das: | |
| Show me the handkerchiefs. | *mujhee rumaal dikhaaiiee.* |
| Who washed'em? | *uoo kis-nee dhooee.* |



Digitized by Google

Ram:

My servant. *naukar-nee.*

Das:

soap *saabun,*
to apply *lagaanaa.*
He washed them in water that was too hot and used bad soap. *us-nee ziaadaa garam paanii-see dhooee, aur xaraab saabun lagaaiaa.*

real *aslii,*
silk *reešam,*
to be made *bannaa.*
Those handkerchiefs are made of real silk. *iee rumaal aslii reešam-kee banee hãĩ.*

to take in exchange *badlii leenaa.*
I can't exchange'em. *mãĩ uoo badlii lee nahĩĩ saktaa.*

if *agar,*
care *hušiaarii,*
to get torn *phaTnaa.*
You see, if your servant had washed'em carefully they wouldn't've gotten torn. *kiõõ-kee agar aap-kaa naukar hušiaarii-see dhootaa, too uoo na-phaTtee.*

Ram:

to us *hamẽẽ.*
Can you sell us some other handkerchiefs? *kiaa tum hamẽẽ kuch duusree rumaal beeč saktee hoo?*

price *ķiimat,*
to be sold *biknaa.*
How much do you sell those handkerchiefs for? *uoo rumaal kis ķiimat-mẽẽ biktee hãĩ.*



Digitized by Google

Das:
They're not for sale.

*uoo rumaal biknee-kee liiee nahĩĩ.*

hither
But if you come with me I'll show you some very good handkerchiefs.

*idhar.*
*leekin agar aap meeree saath idhar aaẽẽ, too mãĩ aap-koo kučh bahot aččhee rumaal dikhaaũũ-gaa.*

Das:
Why don't you take some socks, too?

*kuch moozee bhii liijiiee?*

brown, khaki
brown
it is becoming
Brown socks'll go well with your brown uniform.

*xaakii,*
*braun,*
*aččhaa lagtaa hai.*
*aap-kii xaakii uardii-par, braun moozaa aččhaa lagee-gaa.*

Ram:
How much is all of this then?

*too in sab čiizõõ-kii kitnii ķiimat hai.*

Das:
It's really fourteen rupees.

*aslii daam čaudaa rupaee hãĩ.*

percent
But for soldiers it's twenty-five percent less.

*fii-sadii.*
*leekin sipaahiiõõ-kee liiee, paččiis fii-sadii kam hai.*

Ram:
check
Do you accept checks?

*ček.*
*kiaa tum ček leetee hoo?*

Das:
No, we don't take checks as a rule.

*hamaaraa ček leenee-kaa dastuur nahĩĩ.*



Digitized by Google

to borrow — *udhaar leenaa.*
But perhaps you can have it on credit. — *leekin šaaed aap udhaar lee sakẽẽ.*

proprietor — *maalik.*
Why don't you ask the proprietor? — *maalik-see puučhiiee.*

management — *intezaam,*
hand — *haath.*
He runs the store. — *dukaan-kaa intezaam un-kee haath-mẽẽ hai.*

customer — *gaahak,*
cash — *naḳd paisaa,*
help — *madad,*
to them — *unhẽẽ.*
Whenever customers have no cash, he helps them. — *jab kabhii gaahkõõ-kee paas kuč h naḳd paisaa na-hoo, too unhẽẽ uoo madad kartee hãĩ.*

Ram:

the meaning — *matlab.*
What I mean is: I haven't any small bills with me. — *meeraa matlab iee hai, kee meeree paas čhooTaa paisaa nahĩĩ.*

one thousand — *hazaar,*
bill — *nooT,*
to have something broken — *tuRaanaa.*
But I have a thousand rupee bill that I want to get changed. — *leekin meeree paas hazaar rupaee-kaa nooT hai, joo mãĩ tuRaanaa čaah$^{e}$taa hũũ.*

Das:

to break something — *tooRnaa.*
I think the proprietor can change it. — *meeraa xiaal hai kee maalik iee nooT tooR saktaa hai.*



Digitized by Google

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| fifty-one | *ikkiaauan,* | fifty-six | *čhappan,* |
| fifty-two | *baauan,* | fifty-seven | *sattaauan,* |
| fifty-three | *tirpan,* | fifty-eight | *aTHaauan,* |
| fifty-four | *čauuan,* | fifty-nine | *unsaTh,* |
| fifty-five | *pačpan,* | sixty | *saaTh.* |

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. PRONOUN FORMS IN *-EE, -(H)ẼẼ.*

*kiaa tum hamẽẽ kučh duusree rumaal beeč saktee hoo?* 'Can you sell some other handkerchiefs to us?'
*unhẽẽ madad kartaa hai* 'He helps them'.

For *mujh-koo* '(to) me' you may also use *mujhee* '(to) me'. There are other pairs of interchangeable expressions like this:

*usee, isee = us-koo, is-koo* '(to) him, her'
*kisee = kis-koo* '(to) whom?' (question, singular)
*jisee = jis-koo* '(to) whom' (relative, singular)

Furthermore:

*hamẽẽ = ham-koo* '(to) us'
*tumhẽẽ = tum-koo* '(to) you'
*unhẽẽ, inhẽẽ* = '(to) them'
*kinhẽẽ* = '(to) whom (which ones?)' (question)
*jinhẽẽ* = '(to) whom (the ones who . . .)' (relative)

Note that the singular forms end in *-ee*, the plural forms in *-(h)ẽẽ.*



Digitized by Google

Just like *unhõõ-(nee)*, the *-ee* and *-(h)ẽẽ* forms are used only if the pronouns do NOT describe a following noun:

*us-koo deekhũũ-gaa*
or: *usee deekhũũ-gaa* 'I shall see him'

but only: *us ghooRee-koo deekhũũ-gaa* 'I shall see that horse'

## B. "IF"

1. *agar aap-kaa naukar uoo hušiaarii-see dhootaa. too uoo na-phaTtee* 'If your servant had washed them carefully, they wouldn't have gotten torn.'

2. *agar aap meeree saath idhar aaẽẽ, too mãĩ aap-koo rumaal dikhaaũũ-gaa* 'If you come here with me, I am going to show you handkerchiefs.'

*jab kabhii gaahkõõ-kee paas kuch naḳd paisaa na-hoo, too uoo unhẽẽ madad kartaa hai* 'Whenever customers have no cash, he helps them.'

1. If you compare the two sentences with *agar* 'if', you will agree that there is an essential difference between them. Example (1) implies that the condition ('if . . .') is CONTRARY TO FACT: 'if he HAD washed them right, they WOULD not be torn' (but, unfortunately, he did NOT wash them right.) In this case, both the *agar*-clause and the following *too*-clause contain the verb in the mere present participle form (without *hũũ*, *hai*, *hãĩ*, *thaa* or the like), regardless of whether the sentence refers to a present (if he did . . . , he would . . .) or past (if he had done . . . , he would have . . .) condition. The equivalent of 'not' in both the *agar*- and the *too*-part is *na-* (rather than *nahĩĩ*).

Examples:

*agar tum pasand kartee, uahãã jaatee* 'if you liked it, you would go there,' *or:* 'if you had liked it, you would have gone.' (But, in fact, you do [did] not like it.)

*agar mãĩ na-kartii, bimaar na-hootii* 'if I had not done it, I should not have gotten sick; if I did not do it, I would not get sick.' (But, in fact, I did [am doing] it.)



Digitized by Google

Whenever the present participle is NOT followed by *hũũ*, *hai*, *hãĩ*, *thaa*, etc., it has the special form in *-ĩĩ* for the feminine plural:

*agar meerii bahᵉnẽẽ hušiaarii-see paʀhtĩĩ, iskuul jaanee-kii abhii-tak zaruurat na-hootii* 'if my sisters [had] studied well, they would not have [had] to go to school any more' (But, in fact, they do not [did not] study.)

*iee aurtẽẽ nahĩĩ booltĩĩ* 'these women don't speak' (no *hãĩ* after *nahĩĩ*).

2. Other '*if*'-sentences are different. They don't imply that the condition stated is contrary to fact; rather, the condition is thought of as a possibility for the future: 'if you come with me (SUPPOSE you come with me), I WILL show you . . .' In this type of *agar*-sentence, *agar* is generally followed by the subjunctive (*agar . . . hoo* 'suppose he is . . .'), while the *too*-part usually winds up with a future phrase in *-gaa* (*-gee*, *-gii*), or with another subjunctive, or an imperative in *-iiee* or *-oo*. 'not' in the *agar*-clause is expressed by *na-*.

*agar tum pasand karoo, uahãã jaaoo* 'if you like it, go there'

*agar na-aaee, biimaar hoo-gii* 'if she doesn't come (suppose she doesn't come), she will get sick.'

*jab* 'when' is often treated similarly in sentences of this latter type:

*jab paanii gir rahaa hoo, baahar mat-jaaiiee* 'don't go out when it is raining.'

*jab tum kaam xatam karoo, mãĩ tumhaaree saath aaũũ-gaa* 'when you stop working, I'll come with you.'

## C. ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON PARTICLES

### SUBTRACTION

1. *un-mẽẽ-see kooii kooii phaʀ gaee hãĩ* 'some (out) of them have become torn'.



Digitized by Google

Particles do not freely combine with each other: a word is usually followed by not more than one particle: *un-mẽẽ* 'in them', *un-koo* '(to) them', *un-see* 'from them'. The most important exception is the combination *-mẽẽ-see* 'from among', 'out of', which is generally used in the equivalents of such English phrases as 'one of them', 'some of my friends' (*un-mẽẽ-see eek*, *meeree doostõõ-mẽẽ-see kooii kooii*).

*-mẽẽ-see* is also used in simple arithmetic, to indicate the figure from which another is subtracted. Here is an example for the entire formula:

*saaTh-mẽẽ-see das kam pačaas hootee hãĩ* 'ten less out of sixty become fifty', that is '60 − 10 = 50'.

2. *un-see puučhiiee* 'ask him (polite)!'

Note that, in Hindustani, you do your 'asking' "from" or "with" a person (*-see*). Such verb expressions as *boolnaa*, *kahᵉnaa*, *baatčiit karnaa* 'to talk' also require *-see* to denote the person "with" (rather than "to") whom you talk: *us-see baatčiit na-karoo* 'don't talk to him'.

## D. *IEE . . . KEE*

*meeraa matlab iee hai kee meeree paas čhootaa paisaa nahĩĩ.* 'My idea is this: I have no small change with me', that is 'What I mean is, I have no small change with me'.

In this sentence, the word *matlab* 'meaning, intention' is equated to two things, first to *iee*, and then to a whole clause, starting with *kee* 'that . . .'. This *kee*-clause simply amplifies the *iee* ('my intention is this; NAMELY that I have . . .'), or, to put it from the English point of view, the *iee* simply anticipates or announces the real content of the *kee*-clause. While *iee* has no colloquial equivalent in English, it is nevertheless good Hindustani. Thus you can also say: *meeraa xiaal iee hai kee . . .* 'I think (that) . . . ,' etc.



Digitized by Google

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Go around the class asking each other the following simple arithmetic problems. Both question and answer should be in Hindustani.

*Example:*

1. Question: *doo aur tiin kitnee hootee hãĩ.*
   Answer: *doo aur tiin pããč hootee hãĩ.*
2. Question: *das-mẽẽ-see čaar kam kitnee hootee hãĩ.*
   Answer: *das-mẽẽ-see čaar kam čhai hootee hãĩ.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 + 5 = | 11 + 3 = | 9 + 13 = |
| 21 − 3 = | 21 + 3 = | 33 + 11 = |
| 4 + 27 = | 53 − 20 = | 47 − 10 = |
| 17 − 6 = | 7 + 8 = | 12 − 4 = |
| 6 + 9 = | 15 + 7 = | 13 + 17 = |
| 25 − 7 = | 59 − 2 = | 37 + 14 = |
| 8 + 31 = | 57 − 24 = | 51 − 11 = |
| 21 + 10 = | 11 + 12 = | 49 − 1 = |
| 28 + 1 = | 43 − 13 = | 52 + 8 = |
| 32 + 10 = | 37 − 9 = | 32 + 5 = |
| 47 − 13 = | 56 − 8 = | 36 − 14 = |
| | 41 + 9 = | |

2. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences, using *na-*, if necessary, and the verbs indicated. Use first one, and then the other of the two constructions possible, and give the English equivalents for each resulting sentence.

1. *agar mãĩ iee ------ too biimaar ------.* (*khaanaa, hoonaa*)
2. *agar aap kal ------ mãĩ ghar-par ------.* (*aanaa, rahᵉnaa*)
3. *agar aap us-koo ------ usee xat ------.* (*milnaa, deenaa*)
4. *agar uoo mujhee ------ too xat ------.* (*deekhnaa, deenaa*)

3. Say in Hindustani:

1. He broke the window.
2. The window was broken.
3. The handkerchiefs got torn.
4. He exchanged the handkerchiefs (gave in exchange).



Digitized by Google

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Before going downtown.

Jim: *mãĩ ʈoopii xariidnee jaataa hũũ*[1].

Paul: *kiaa ham loog bhii čalẽẽ?*

Jim: *tum kiaa xariidoo-gee.*

Paul: *meeraa juutaa phaʈaa hai.*
*mujhee naiaa xariidnaa čaahiiee.*

Jim: *too us-kii marammat karaaoo.*
*sirf thooʀee daam lagẽẽ-gee.*

Paul: *jii nahĩĩ. mujhee naee juutee-kii zaruurat hai.*

2. In the department store, I.

Paul: *braun jooʀaa juutaa dikhaaoo.*

Das: *kis nambar-kaa.*

Paul: *saaʀhee saat.*

Das: *iee juutaa pahᵉniiee.*
*kiaa aap-kee ʈhiik hai?*[2]

Paul: *mãĩ uoo bahot pasand nahĩĩ kartaa hũũ.*

Das: *iee juutaa bahot aččhaa banaa hai.*
*aap-koo kabhii nahĩĩ talliif dee-gaa.*

[1] 'I go buy. . .'
[2] 'fit you'

*aur aap-kii xaakii uardii-par, braun juutaa aččhaa lagtaa hai.*

Paul: *juutaa kitnee daam-mẽẽ biktaa hai.*

Das: *sirf das rupaee.*

Paul: *kiaa mãĩ udhaar lee saktaa hũũ?*
*meeree paas naḳd paisaa nahĩĩ.*

Das: *udhaar deenaa mumkin nahĩĩ.*
*leekin ham ček leetee hãĩ.*

Paul: *aččhaa. mãĩ aap-koo ček dũũ-gaa.*

3. In the department store, II.

Jim: *kal mãĩ-nee kuč moozee xariidee.*
*aur un-mẽẽ-see eek-mẽẽ daaġ hai.*
*aur kooii kooii phaʈee hãĩ.*

Das: *mãĩ xušii-see badlii lee saktaa hũũ.*
*čhaʈuẽẽ nambar-kii jagaa jaaiiee.*
*maalik uahãã hai.*
*uoo aap-koo madad karee-gaa.*
*kiaa mãĩ aap-kee liiee kuč aur kar saktaa hũũ?*

Jim: *jii hãã mãĩ ʈoopii xariidnaa čaahᵉtaa hũũ.*

Das: *kis ḳisim-kii ʈoopii.*

Jim: *mujhee barsaatii ʈoopii-kii zaruurat hai.*



Digitized by Google

Das: *aap kis nambar-kii Toopii pahentee hãĩ.*

Jim: *paunee das.*

Das: *agar aap meeree saath iahãã aaẽẽ mãĩ aap-koo kuch Toopiiãã dikhaaũũ-gaa.*

4. Aziz meets Mr. Ram, whose arm is all bandaged up.

Aziz: *aap-kee haath-mẽẽ kiaa huuaa.*

Ram: *mãĩ-nee mooTargaaRii-see Takkar khaaii. aur meeraa haath TuuT gaiaa.*[1]

Aziz: *kiaa aap-kii mooTargaaRii xaraab thii? iaa čalaaneeuaalaa Thiik nahĩĩ.*

Ram: *meerii mooTar too naii hai, aur čalaaneeuaalaa bhii bahot hušiaar hai, leekin duusrii mooTar-nee piičhee-see Takkar khaaii.*

[1] 'broke'

Aziz: *aap-koo gaaRii TuuTnee-kii baabat paisaa milnaa čaahiiee.*

Ram: *iee too Thiik hai. leekin uoo aadmii meerii biiuii-kaa rišteedaar hai.*

Aziz: *kiaa aap-kii gaaRii bahot TuuTii hai?*

Ram: *kaariigar-nee phir naii-kii taraa banaa dii.*

Aziz: *meeraa xiaal hai kee aap kisii hušiaar DaakTar-kee paas jaa-kar apnaa haath Thiik karẽẽ. kiaa aap mooTargaaRii-mẽẽ akeelee thee?*

Ram: *mãĩ aur meerii biiuii doonõõ sirf baiThee huuee thee.*

Aziz: *mujh-koo ummiid hai kee aap-kii biiuii-koo kuch nahĩĩ huuaa.*

Ram: *xudaa-kii meherbaanii. uoo ačchii hai.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. You go into a store to exchange a hat you bought a few days before. Tell the shopkeeper that the hat's too big for you and that your wife has told you that it doesn't go well with your coat. The shopkeeper will refuse to exchange the hat, because it's not the custom to exchange things that have been worn. Argue with him.

b. It is running toward the end of the month and you suddenly find yourself without money. Go to several of your friends and ask them to lend you



Digitized by Google

some. You'll try to tell as convincing a hard-luck story as you can, while they'll try to put you off by telling you about their own troubles.

c. You want to sell your business. A prospective buyer asks you about the kind of shop you're running, customers (do they pay promptly, in cash or by check); etc.

2. Make up questions and answers on the *Listening In*.

## FINDER LIST

*a*

*agar* if
*aslii* real
*aṬhaauan* fifty-eight

*b*

*baauan* fifty-two
*badlii deenaa* to give in exchange
*badlii leenaa* to take in exchange
*bannaa* (N) to be made, to become
*biknaa* (N) to be sold
*braun* brown

*č*

*čauuan* fifty-four
*ček* check
*čhappan* fifty-six

*d*

*dukaanuaalaa* sales clerk

*f*

*fii-sadii* percent

*g*

*gaahak* customer

*h*

*haath* hand, arm
*hamēē* see *Word Study*
*hazaar* one thousand
*hušiaarii* (*-ii*) care, attention, intelligence

*i*

*idhar* hither, in this direction
*ikkiaauan* fifty-one
*intezaam* management

*ķ*

*ķiimat* (*-ii*) price

*l*

*lagaanaa* (T) to apply

*m*

*maalik* proprietor; boss,
*madad* (*-ii*) help, assistance
(*-ii*) *madad karnaa* to help . . .
*matlab* meaning



Digitized by Google

*n*

*nakd* cash
*nooT* bill, note

*p*

*pačpan* fifty-five
*phaTnaa* (N) to get torn
*phaT jaanaa* to get torn

*r*

*reešam* silk
*rumaal* handkerchief

*s*

*saabun* soap
*saaTh* sixty
*sattaauan* fifty-seven

*t·*

*tirpan* fifty-three
*tooRnaa* (T) to break something
*tuRaanaa* (T) to have something broken

*u*

*udhaar leenaa* to buy on credit, borrow,
*udhaar deenaa* to give on credit, lend
*unhẽẽ* see *Word Study*
*unsaTh* fifty-nine

*x*

*xaakii* brown, khaki



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 18

## REVIEW

### SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN HINDUSTANI?

This section is a true-false quiz like those in units 6 and 12. Write down the numbers from 1 to 80 on a piece of paper, and as the statements are read to you, write *T* or *F* opposite the number of the statement. After you finish the quiz, the Leader will read out the correct answers for each statement. Check your paper and give your score to the Leader. He will figure out the average for your group. If your score is less than the average, or less than 80%, you need more review of the previous units.

Spend the rest of the time going over the items on which you had difficulty.

### SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

1. Practice saying out loud the Hindustani for the following sentences. Keep at them until you know them all cold. Do not write anything down. This is individual study.

I.

1. How do I get ('go') to Sixteenth Street?
2. Please buy those two pairs of shoes.
3. Have the others repaired.
4. How many times will you meet me this month?
5. The poor fellow is going out for the first time after his illness.
6. I like ordinary shoes better ('more') than these.
7. We are going to invite them for the fourth time, then.
8. You should start wearing this now.

II.

1. My friend didn't unde stand well.
2. I got malaria in India last year.



Digitized by Google

3. The doctor wouldn't let me eat everything.
4. The train didn't leave on time.
5. We used to meet twice a month.
6. You didn't come back again.
7. Did you get anything ('any result') out of your cruise?
8. Usually they brought me presents from India before the war.

III.

1. Do you know how to drive a car?
2. Yesterday I ran into a couple of cows with ('in') my car.
3. I tried to repair my car.
4. The farmer showed us his house and his animals.
5. They used to grow a lot of corn.
6. I didn't smoke ('drink') any tobacco.
7. They were driving my car.
8. They visited us once.

IV.

1. Where is your laundryman from?
2. Is this the barber who comes all the time?
3. He is wearing the hat I gave him.
4. He is eating too much, as he usually does ('according to his habit').
5. There is a hole in the pants which I took to (*-ee paas*) the laundryman.
6. You are not the barber who gave me a haircut last month.
7. These are the socks I lost.
8. Please wash the socks with the stain in them.

V.

1. If you knew who I am, you wouldn't be asking me questions.
2. Fifty-three minus nineteen equal thirty-four.
3. Did you see us in town yesterday?
4. I think we can help them if they do what we want.
5. A customer gave me a 50 rupee bill. I asked Aziz, but I couldn't get it changed.
6. I can't change it myself, I am sorry; but I'll try to get it changed for you.
7. This hat won't look good on your new clothes.
8. If you had sold the silk you wouldn't be in trouble now.

2. Pick the right sentence:

1. Have my shoes fixed:

a. *juutaa marammat karoo.*
b. *juutaa marammat karaaiiee.*
c. *juutaa marammat kiijiiee.*



Digitized by Google

2. Dinner will start at 7 o'clock:
   a. *khaanaa saat bajee šuruu karee-gaa.*
   b. *khaanaa saat bajee šuruu hoo-gaa.*
   c. *khaanaa saat bajee xatam hoo-gaa.*

3. Perhaps I'll grow some trees:
   a. *šaaed kuč daraxt paidaa hoo-gaa.*
   b. *šaaed kuč jaanuar paidaa karũũ-gaa.*
   c. *šaaed kuč daraxt paidaa karũũ.*

4. They wouldn't let me go in:
   a. *andar jaanee-kii manaahii thii.*
   b. *andar jaanee-kii ijaazat thii.*
   c. *andar jaanee-kii ijaazat na-thii.*

5. What did you hear?:
   a. *kiaa sunaa.*
   b. *aap-nee kiaa sunaa hai.*
   c. *aap kiaa suntee hãĩ.*

6. If he had paid me a visit, everything would have been all right:
   a. *agar meerii mulaaḳaat karee, too sab Thiik hoo-gaa.*
   b. *mulaaḳaat karnee-kii uajaa-see sab Thiik hoo.*
   c. *agar meerii mulaaḳaat kartaa, too sab Thiik hootaa.*

7. They took me to the farm:
   a. *mujhee kheet-mẽẽ lee gaee.*
   b. *mujh-koo kheet-mẽẽ lee gaiaa.*
   c. *unhõõ-nee meeraa kheet liiaa.*

8. We tried it:
   a. *is-kii koošiš kii.*
   b. *ham-nee is-kii koošiš na-kii.*
   c. *hamaarii koošiš kii.*

9. My work isn't interesting:
   a. *meeree kaam-kii ijaazat nahĩĩ.*
   b. *meeraa kaam dilčasp nahĩĩ.*
   c. *kaam-see mujhee bahot dilčaspii aatii hai.*

10. My wife had phoned me [before]:
   a. *biiuii mujh-koo Tailiifuun-see bulaatii thii.*
   b. *biiuii-nee mujhee Tailiifuun-see bulaaiaa thaa.*
   c. *apnii biiuii-koo Tailifuun-see bulaataa thaa.*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Group Leader on the Sentences in Section B, asking various members of the group: ". . . *-koo hindustaanii-mẽẽ kiaa kahᵉtee hai*".

## SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

### I.

1. Say the Hindustani for:

1. Please meet me at 11:30.
2. He is wearing my clothes.
3. Let's go to the eighth floor in the elevator, and walk up to the ninth.
4. This is the first time that I have my clothes mended.
5. I think this town is the prettiest in the world.
6. Do you know the cashier?
7. The waiters in this place quit working at a quarter to two in the morning.

### II.

1. My relatives used to bring presents.
2. I cannot stand that country.
3. The doctor wasn't interested in the effect of the medicine.
4. On account of the climate ('from the climate') he became seriously ill.
5. The clothes fell from the table.
6. Good medicines are usually bitter.
7. It wasn't possible to stay there for a while.
8. He was allowed to bring his relatives to the house.

### III.

1. Did you do anything in the meantime?
2. I am about to drive to town. Do you want to go with me?
3. What is needed to grow fruit in the garden?
4. The children ate all the candy.
5. I heard the soil is good around here. Is this true?
6. It is good for some things, and bad for others.
7. Is the land behind the tobacco field ('farm') yours?
8. The driver called me.



Digitized by Google

IV.

1. Whose is this hat? It isn't mine.
2. These are the pants I complained about yesterday.
3. You are in the habit ('Yours is the habit') of driving too fast.
4. To whom did you tell this?
5. He was waiting for the laundryman who had ironed the brown pants.
6. Which tailor did you give it to?
7. I was very glad when you told me.
8. The address I gave you was wrong.

V.

1. If it were real silk, it wouldn't tear.
2. If you use good soap they won't tear.
3. If I give you a check, will you kindly give me cash ('money')?
4. The boss doesn't give anything on credit.
5. If he knows you, he will cash ('break') your check.
6. I would do it, if it were a smaller check.
7. They exchanged these handkerchiefs yesterday.
8. If you sell these handkerchiefs, you are a very good salesclerk.

2. Fill in the blank spaces:

1. *biimaarii xatam -------kii uajaa-see kaam kar saktaa hai.*
2. *j------ mulk-see aaii hai, u-------mẽẽ kooii ʀailiifuun nahĩĩ hãĩ.*
3. *agar patluun-see daaʂ nikaal------ , too mãĩ uoo pahen saktaa.*
4. *j------ basõõ-kee andar aččhii kursiiãã hãĩ, u------ naee hãĩ.*
5. *j------ meh$^{e}$maan------ daauat kii, u------ mooʀar-mẽẽ aaẽẽ-gee.*
6. *agar moozaa aččhaa na-lagee, too duusraa xariid------ .*
7. *j------ paisaa diiaa, u------ kis-kee liiee thaa.*
8. *agar ab laʀaaii na-hootii, too sab čiizõõ-kee daam bahot kam ------ .*
9. *meeree baap sab ḳisim-kee jaanuar paidaa ------ tee thee.*
10. *gaaõõ-mẽẽ rah$^{e}$naa mujhee pasand ------ .*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT? (*Cont.*)

Quiz by the Group Leader on the Sentences in Section D, asking various members of the group: ". . . *-koo hindustaanii-mee kiaa kah$^{e}$tee hai*".

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

Hold a series of conversations on any of the topics covered so far. All members of the group should have a chance to take part. Here are some suggested topics:

1. Tell someone about what you did yesterday: you went to the bank, to various stores, barbershop, tailor's, laundry, etc.

2. You want to buy some real estate, and take up farming again. You go out to the place you have in mind and talk it over with the local farmers: crops, markets, soil, weather, etc.

3. Tell someone about an illness in your family.

4. Your son is graduating from college next month. You invite a couple of friends to the party you are going to give in his honor. They inquire about the kind of presents he'd like for the occasion.

5. You're sick in bed, and so you call a friend of yours and ask him to do you some favors: call a doctor, cash a check, get some medicine, get your laundry.

6. Tell your friend a hard luck story about the business experiences you've had in various lines (tailor, barbershop, shopkeeper) and what would have happened, if . . .

7. You try to borrow some money from a man you know. You tell him that you own some land which could serve as a security. He wants to know more, and finally agrees to give you a small loan. You're not satisfied.



Digitized by Google

# TEA

## SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Two ladies, an American and a Hindu, sit down to tea.

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| Nora: | |
| Come in! | *andar aaiee.* |
| state (of health) | *tabiiat.* |
| How are you? | *aap-kii tabiiat kaisii hai.* |
| Fatima: | |
| I'm well, thank you. | *meherbaanii. mãĩ accchii hũũ.* |
| Nora: | |
| door | *daruaazaa,* |
| to close something | *band karnaa.* |
| Close the door and sit down. | *daruaazaa band kiijiiee, aur baiTHiiee.* |
| Tea'll be ready in a few minutes. | *doo tiin minaT-mẽẽ čaaee taiiaar hoo-gii.* |
| Fatima: | |
| to be closed | *band hoonaa.* |
| The door doesn't close. | *daruaazaa band hoo nahĩĩ saḳtaa.* |



Digitized by Google

key
It doesn't have a key, [either].

*kunjii.*
*us-kii kunjii nahĩĩ.*

Nora:
to be opened
Leave it open then.

*khulnaa.*
*too khulaa rakhiiee.*

There's no harm in a door staying open.

*daruaazaa khulaa rah$^{e}$nee-mẽẽ kuč har(a)j nahĩĩ.*

Husein, set the table!

*ai husain; meez lagaaoo.*

plate
cup
spoon
knife
fork
And put on (it) plates, cups, spoons, knives, [and] forks.

*pleeT,*
*piaalaa,*
*čamčaa,*
*čhurii,*
*kããTaa.*
*aur us-mẽẽ pleeT, piaalee, čamčee, čhuriiãã, aur kããTee rakh doo.*

Husein:
which?
Which plates?

*kaun-saa.*
*kaun-see pleeT.*

kitchen
to take
Take the plates that are in the kitchen.

*baauarčiixaanaa,*
*lee leenaa.*
*joo pleeT baauarčiixaanee-mẽẽ hãĩ, lee loo.*

floor
to drop something
And be careful when you bring the tea: don't spill anything on the floor!

*faraš* or *farš,*
*giraanaa.*
*aur čaaee laanee-mẽẽ hušiaar rahoo. faraš-par kuč na-giraaoo.*



Digitized by Google

Fatima:

picture
to draw
I hear(d) (that) you draw pictures.

*tasuiir,*
*khīīčnaa.*
*mãĩ-nee sunaa kee aap tasuiirẽẽ khīīčtii hãĩ.*

Nora:

as big as this
Yes, I made a picture that is this big.

*itnaa baRaa.*
*jii hãã. mãĩ-nee tasuiir banaaii joo itnii baRii hai.*

wall
to hang something up
Do you think I can hang it on that wall?

*diuaar,*
*laTkaanaa.*
*kiaa aap samajhtii hãĩ, kee mãĩ uoo tasuiir us diuaar-par laTkaa saktii hũũ?*

Fatima:

thin
That wall seems very thin.

*patlaa*
*uoo diuaar bahot patlii maaluum hootii hai.*

Nora:

Yes, you're right.

*jii hãã. aap-kaa xiaal Thiik hai.*

to search
I'll have to look for another place to hang the picture.

*talaaš karnaa.*
*mujh-koo tasuiir laTkaanee-kee liiee, duusrii jagaa talaaš karnaa hoo-gii.*

to pour
Let's go to the sitting room now and I'll pour the tea.

*Daalnaa.*
*ab baiThnee-kee kamree-mẽẽ jaaẽẽ, mãĩ čaaee Daalũũ-gii.*

sugar
Do you take sugar in your tea?

*šakkar.*
*kiaa aap čaaee-mẽẽ šakkar leetii hãĩ?*

Fatima:

Yes, thank you.

*jii hãã. šukriiaa.*



Digitized by Google

Nora:

This candy's (come) from America.

*iee miTHaaii amriikaa-see aaii hai.*

mother

*uaaldaa.*

When I was a little girl my mother used to make it.

*jab mãĩ bahot čhooTii-sii laRkii thii, meerii uaaldaa uoo banaatii thĩĩ.*

as much as

to take

*jitnaa.*

*lee leenaa.*

Take as much as you want.

*jitnii caah$^{e}$tii hãĩ, utnii lee liijiiee.*

Fatima:

It's delicious.

*uoo bahot mazeedaar hai.*

butter

*makkhan.*

Is there butter in it?

*kiaa us-mẽẽ makkhan hai?*

Nora:

nut

*meeuaa.*

No, there is nothing in it but sugar and nuts.

*jii nahĩĩ. uoo sirf šakkar aur meeuee-see banii hai.*

Will you please give me your cup!

*mujh-koo apnaa piaalaa diijiiee?*

to fill something

*bharnaa.*

I'll fill it again.

*mãĩ phir bharũũ-gii.*

Fatima:

No, thank you: I've still got some (tea in my cup).

*jii nahĩĩ meherbaanii. piaalee-mẽẽ abhii-tak čaaee hai.*

Nora:

But tell me . . .

*phir mujh-koo bataaiiee, . . .*

. . . I heard that one of your sons wasn't quite well.

*. . . mãĩ-nee sunaa kee tumhaaraa eek beeTaa kučh biimaar thaa?*



Digitized by Google

condition — *haalat.*

How is he [now]? — *us-kii haalat kaisii hai.*

Fatima:

He's not well yet. — *uoo abhii-tak aċċhaa nahĩĩ.*

Nora:

That's a shame. — *afsoos-kii baat.*

What's the matter with him? — *us-koo kiaa takliif hai.*

Fatima:

to vomit — *ḳaee karnaa.*

He throws up everything he eats. — *joo kuċh khaataa hai, uoo ḳaee kartaa haị.*

Nora:

doctor — *hakiim,*

you'll have to — *tum-koo paRee-gaa.*

You'll have to take him to the doctor. — *tum-koo hakiim-kee paas lee jaanaa paRee-gaa.*

special — *xaas.*

He needs special food. — *us-koo xaas khaanee-kii zaruurat hai.*

Fatima:

(in) such a way (as) — *jaisaa.*

Yes, I think I'll do that (I'll do as you say). — *jaisaa aap kah$^{e}$tii hãĩ aisaa mãĩ karũũ-gii.*

## Numbers

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sixty-one | *iksaTh,* | sixty-six | *čhiaasaṫh,* |
| sixty-two | *baasaTh,* | sixty-seven | *sarsaTh,* |
| sixty-three | *tirsaTh,* | sixty-eight | *arsaTh,* |
| sixty-four | *čãũsaTh,* | sixty-nine | *unhattar,* |
| sixty-five | *p̃ãĩsaTh,* | seventy | *sattar.* |



Digitized by Google

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. WORDS IN *-SAA*

1. *jab māī bahot čhooTii-sii laRkii thii* 'When I was a little girl'

2. *kaun-see pleeT* 'just which plates?'

An adjective-like word *-saa* (*-see*, *-sii*) may follow such adjectives as *čhooTaa* 'small', *thooRaa* 'little, few' *bahot* 'many' and the like. Both the *-saa* and the adjective preceding it (if it is one with changing endings) agree with the subject in number and gender. For instance:

| | |
|---|---|
| *bahot-see loogõõ-see* | 'with many people' |
| *čhooTee-see ghooRee-par* | 'on a small horse' |
| *thooRii-sii narangiiãã* | 'rather few oranges' |

It is hard to define the exact meaning of *-saa*. There is practically no difference between *bahot* and *bahot-see*. In other cases it adds a little vagueness to the expression: *čhooTaa-saa* 'smallish, kind of little'.

2. *-saa* (*-see -sii*) may follow *kaun* 'which?', when describing a following noun. In this case, only *-saa* (*-see*, *-sii*) is inflected to agree with the subject; *kaun-* does not change:

*kaun-saa din* 'which day?'
*kaun-see din* (= *kis din*) 'on which day?'
*kaun-sii saRak* 'which street?'
*kaun-sii saRak-par* (= *kis saRak-par*) 'on which street?'
*kaun-see loog* 'which people?'
*kaun-see kamrõõ-mẽẽ* (= *kin kamrõõ-mẽẽ*) 'in which rooms?'
*kaun-sii tasuiirẽẽ* 'which pictures?'
*kaun-sii čiizõõ-koo* (= *kin čiizõõ-koo*) 'to which things?'



Digitized by Google

## B. SETS WITH *I-*, *U-*, *K-*, *J-*

1. *mausam hameešaa aisaa hai* 'the season is always like this'
   *aap kaisee hāī* '(in which condition), how are you?'
   *us-kii haalat kaisii hai* 'how is her health'
   *safar kaisee kiiaa* 'how did you (etc.) travel'
   *jaisaa aap kahᵉtii hāī māī aisaa karūū-gii* 'I'll do it the way you say it'

2. *tasuiir itnii baʀii hai* 'the picture is this big'
   *bazaar iahāā-see kitnii duur hai* 'how far is the bazar from here?'
   *jitnii (čaaee) čaahᵉtii hāī utnii lee liijiiee* 'take as much (tea) as you wish'

Go back to the forms and meanings of: *uoo, us, un, iee, is, in, kaun (kiaa), kis, kin, joo, jis, jin* and remember the way in which these words are used: *iee (is, isee, in, inhōō-(nee))* for pointing to something immediately near the speaker; *uoo* (etc.) in referring to something not immediately present; *kaun* (etc.) in 'specific' questions; *joo* (etc.) to join two clauses together ('relative pronoun').

As you are by now aware, there are other sets of words which are related to each other in very much the same way. Also, their initial sounds remind you of *is, us, kis, jis*. Here is a list for most of them:

| *iee* | *uoo* | *kaun, kiaa* | *joo* |
|---|---|---|---|
| *aisaa*<br>'such' (like this) | *uaisaa*<br>'such' (like that) | *kaisaa*<br>'how?' ('of what kind?') | *jaisaa*<br>'(such) as' |
| *itnaa*<br>'this much, many' | *utnaa*<br>'that much, many' | *kitnaa*<br>'how much, many?' | *jitnaa*<br>'(as much, many) as' |
| *iahāā*<br>'here' | *uahāā*<br>'there' | *kahāā*<br>'where?' | *jahāā*<br>'(there,) where' |
| | [*tab*]<br>'then' | *kab*<br>'when?' | *jab*<br>'(at the time) when' |



Digitized by Google

*aisaa, uaisaa, kaisaa, jaisaa* and *itnaa, utnaa, jitnaa, kitnaa* are of course adjectives and change their endings to agree with gender of the noun or sex of the person to which they refer.

Note especially such phrases as *itnee aččhee haĩ* 'they are so good (literally: this much good)', *uoo imaartẽ kitnii baRii thĩĩ* 'how big (literally: how much big) were those buildings?', *pahaaR utnee ũũčee haĩ* 'the mountains are so ("that much") high; *tasuiir itnii baRii hai* 'the picture is this ("this much") big'.

*aisee* (and, of course, *uaisee, kaisee, jaisee*) may be used as a set form (always ending in *-ee*) in the meaning 'in such a manner (in which manner = *how;* in such a manner *as* . . .)' much like *is* (*us, kis, jis*) *taraa*. Examples: *safar kaisee kiiaa* 'how did you (etc.) travel'; *kalkattee-koo kaisee jaaũũ* 'how do I get to Calcutta'; *aisee kiijiiee* 'please do it this way; here is how you should do it'.

*iahãã, uahãã, kahãã, jahãã* do not change their endings. They may, however, be combined with *-kaa* in phrases like *iahãã-kee daraxt ũũčee hãĩ* 'the trees ("of") here are high'; *uahãã-kii masjidẽẽ* 'the mosques there (that is: of that city)'. Here are some examples for *jahãã* '(there) where': *kalkattee-see aace hãĩ jahãã un-kee uaalid rahᵉtee thee* 'he (polite) came from Calcutta where his father used to live'; *jahãã-see uoo loog aa rahee haĩ us taraf čaloo* 'go in the direction from where those people are coming!'.

3. It is important to note the Hindustani equivalents of a number of English words such as 'how', 'as', 'who', 'when', etc. 'As' is *jaisaa* (*-ee, -ii*) in *jaisaa aap kahᵉtee hai* (*uaisaa*) *mãĩ karũũ-gaa* 'as you say (that is, such a thing as you say)'; it is *jaisee* in *jaisee aap-nee safar kiiaa uaisee kãĩ karũũ-gaa* 'I will take my trip as you did (that is: the way you did it)'; it is *jitnaa* (*-ee, -ii*) in *jitnee paisee lagee utnee meeree paas na-thee* 'I did not have as much money as it took'. 'How' may be *kaisaa* (*-ee, -ii*) in *aap kaisii hãĩ* 'how are you (woman spoken to)?'; or *kaisee* in *tum-nee safar kaisee kiiaa* 'how did you travel'; or *kitnaa* (*-ee, -ii*) in *šaher kitnaa baRaa hai* 'how large is the city?'.

The *k-* and *j-* words must not be confused. The *k*-words are, of course, used in actual questions such as *gaaRii kab jaaee-gii* 'when will the train go?'. They are also used when the question is not actually asked, but when the asking of the question is only reported (so-called "INDIRECT question"): *us-see puučhoo kee gaaRii kab jaaee-gii* 'ask him when the train is going to leave', or when the contents of somebody else's statement are reported: *unhõõ-nee kahaa kee kaam kaun karee-gaa* 'they told (me) who would do the work' (Note the "untranslatable" *kee* indicating quotation!).



Digitized by Google

Compare, therefore:

*mujhee bataaiiee, kee kaam kis-nee kiiaa* 'Tell me who worked'
*jis-nee kaam kiiaa, uoo meeree bhaaii hãĩ* 'It was my brother who worked'
*hindustaan-mẽẽ kitnee loog rahᵉtee hãĩ, uoo mujhee maaluum nahĩĩ* 'How many people live in India, I do not know'
*jitnee loog is šaher-mee rahᵉtee hãĩ, utnee loogõõ-kee liiee kaam hoo-gaa* 'There will be work for as many people as live in this city'
*tum-koo dikhaaũũ-gaa, kee gaaRii kahãã-see čhuuTtii hai* 'I will show you (from) where the train leaves'
*jahãã-see gaaRiiãã čhuuTĩĩ, uahãã mujh-see miloo* 'meet me (at the place) (from) where the trains left'.

## C. *HOONAA, PARNAA* 'TO HAVE TO'

*duusrii jagaa talaaš karnaa hoo-gii* '(I) shall have to look for another place'.
*hakiim-kee paas lee jaanaa paRee-gaa* '(You) will have to take (him) to the doctor'.

*hoo-gaa* (literally: "it will be") and *paRee-gaa* (literally: "it will fall" ["the lot will fall to me"]) provides another equivalent for the English expression "I shall have too . . . , they will have to . . .";

*mujhee paidal jaanaa hoo-gaa* 'I shall have to walk'.
*kaam karnaa paRee-gaa* 'it will be necessary to work; the work will have to be done'.

In all these cases the infinitive in *-naa* may be made the subject of the expression. In other words, *mujh-koo jaanaa hoo-gaa* 'to me going will be (necessary)' is quite parallel to *mujh-koo uaḳt hoo-gaa* 'to me time will be, I



Digitized by Google

will have time'. Thus, it is possible to say *duusrii jagaa talaaš karnaa hoo-gaa* 'finding another place will be (necessary)'.

However, in this last example, *duusrii jagaa* may also be made the subject in which case *karnaa* is disregarded for the purposes of the construction: *duusrii jagaa talaaš karnaa hoo-gii* 'another place will be (necessary, namely to be sought)'. Other examples:

*laRkõõ-koo kitaabẽẽ paRhnaa paRee-gaa* (or: *paRẽẽ-gii*) 'the boys will have to read books'.
*un-koo kuch kapRee xariidnaa hoo-gaa* (or: *hõõ-gee*) 'they will have to buy some clothes'.

Note: Some speakers use a third expression: *duusrii jagaa talaaš karnii hoo-gii*. *jagaa* is again the subject, but the infinitive instead of being disregarded is inflected for gender and number, that is, treated like an adjective.

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Here are some questions about the *Basic Sentences* and other subjects. Read each question aloud and give your answer in a complete sentence.

1. Nora-*kii meh$^{e}$maan-kaa kiaa naam thaa.*
2. *kiaa* Nora-*kee paas naukar thaa?*
3. *us-kaa kiaa naam thaa.*
4. *naukar-nee meez-par kaun-sii čiizẽẽ rakh dii.*
5. *joo pleeT baiThnee-kee kamree-mẽẽ thee kiaa naukar-nee uoo liiee?*
6. *kiaa fatiimaa-nee daruaazaa band kiiaa?*
7. *daruaazaa kiõõ band hoo nahii sakaa.*
8. *čaaee kis-nee Daalii.*
9. *kiaa fatiimaa čaaee-mẽẽ šakkar leetii thii?*
10. *miThaaii kahãã-see aaii thii.*
11. *miThaaii-kii baabat* Nora-*nee kiaa kahaa.*
12. *fatiimaa-kee beeTee-kii haalat kaisii thii.*
13. *us-koo kiaa takliif thii.*
14. *fatiimaa us-koo kis-kee paas lee jaaee-gii.*
15. *čhurii kis liiee hai.*
16. *jis jagaa-mẽẽ khaanaa pakaatee hãi us-koo kiaa kah$^{e}$tee hãi.*
17. *kiaa aap-nee kabhii tasuiir khiičnee-kii koošiš kii?*



Digitized by Google

18. *kiaa sipaahiiõõ-koo xaas khaanaa miltaa hai?*
19. *kiaa is kamree-mẽẽ khiʀkii khulii hai?*
20. *faraš kahãã hai.*
21. *aam taur-par kamree-kii kitnii diuaarẽẽ hãĩ.*
22. *aap-kii tabiiat kaisii hai.*

2. Say in Hindustani:

1. When will the train leave?
2. When the train leaves, (then) I'll go home.
3. Where are you going?
4. Where you'll go, (there) I shall go, too.
5. My father lives here.
6. I can't give you as much money as you want.
7. Such a man as you saw doesn't live in this village.
8. I never heard (of) a thing like that.
9. How many books are there on the table?
10. I don't know who sent that letter.
11. The man who sent that letter is no friend of mine.

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Husein is offering his services.

Husein: *mãĩ samajhtaa hũũ kee aap-koo naukar-kii zaruurat hai.*

Potter: *jii hãã. iee sač hai.*
*kiaa tum meeree liiee kaam karnaa čaahʿtee hoo?*

Husein: *jii hãã janaab.*

Potter: *tum kis ḳisim-kaa kaam kartee thee.*

Husein: *sab ḳisim-kaa kaam kar saktaa hũũ.*

Potter: *kiaa tum khaanaa pakaanaa jaantee hoo?*

Husein: *zaruur janaab.*
*mãĩ hindustaanii khaanaa aur angreezii khaanaa doonõč pakaa saktaa hũũ.*
*mãĩ kapʀee bahot ačchii taraa saaf kar saktaa hũũ.*
*aur mãĩ mooTar čalaanaa bhii jaantaa hũũ.*

Potter: *bahot ačchaa.*
*kiaa tum mooTar-kii marammat karnaa jaantee hoo?*

Husein: *jii hãã janaab. mãĩ sab kaam kar saktaa hũũ.*



Digitized by Google

Potter: *too mujh-koo bataaoo kee tum kahãã-par*[1] *kaam. kartee thee.*

Husein: *tiin mahiinee-tak raam laal saaheb-kee ghar-mẽẽ kaam kartaa thaa.*

Potter: *aччhaa. too mãĩ raam laal-see mulaaḳaat karũũ-gaa.*

2. Ram Lal inquires about Husein.

Potter: *salaam. kiaa raam laal ghar-par hãĩ?*

*naukar:* *jii hãã janaab.*
*thooRii deer Thairiiee.*
*mãĩ un-koo bulaaũũ-gaa.*

Potter: *aччhaa.*

Ram Lal: *aadaab-arz janaab.*
*mãĩ aap-kee liiee kiaa kar saktaa hũũ.*

Potter: *mãĩ samajhtaa hũũ kee eek aadmii jis-kaa naam husein hai, kučh din aap-kee ghar-mẽẽ kaam kartaa thaa.*

Ram Lal: *jii hãã.*

Potter: *kiaa uoo aччhaa naukar hai?*

Ram Lal: *jii nahĩĩ janaab. uoo bahot xaraab naukar hai.*

Potter: *kiõõ. uoo aччhaa aadmii maaluum hootaa hai.*

Ram Lal: *suniiee janaab.*
*us-nee itnee pleeT tooRee kee ham-koo maaluum nahĩĩ kee kaisee khaaẽẽ.*
*joo kuch*[1] *us-nee pakaaiaa us-mẽẽ ziaadaa namak thaa.*
*aur joo kunjii mãĩ-nee us-koo dii uoo fauran khoo gaii.*

Potter: *us-nee mujh-koo kahaa kee mãĩ mooTar čalaanaa jaantaa hũũ.*
*kiaa iee Thiik hai?*
*mujh-koo mooTar čalaaneeuaalee-kii bahot zaruurat hai.*

Ram Lal: *agar uoo aap-kii mooTar čalaaee-gaa too jaldii aap-koo aspataal jaanaa paRee-gaa.*

Potter: *afsoos-kii baat.*
*mujh-koo duusree naukar-kii talaaš karnaa hoo-gii.*

3. Jim complains to the hotel manager.

Jim: *meeree kamree-kee diuaarõõ-par joo tasuiirẽẽ laTkii*[2] *hãĩ, uoo bahot mailii hãĩ. aur kapRõõ-kii jagaa bahot čhooTii hai.*

[1] 'whatever'
[2] *laTaknaa* (N) 'to hang = be hung'



Digitized by Google

*daruaazee-kii kunjii itnii xaraab hai kee khoolnaa aur band karnaa bahot muškil hai.*

*čhat-see paanii girtaa hai, aur us-see patlaa farš xaraab hootaa hai.*

*baauarčiixaanee-mẽẽ pleeT, piaalee, čhurii, kããTee aur čamčeee dhoonee-see itnaa šoor hootaa hai, kee mãĩ khiRkii nahĩĩ khool saktaa, aur garmii-see meerii tabiiat xaraab hootii hai.*

*meerii uaaldaa kamree-kee liiee sattar rupaee aap-koo bheejtii hãĩ.*

*agar aap kuch intezaam nakarẽẽ-gee, too mãĩ kooi xaas jagaaa talaaš karũũ-gaa.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. Your little boy has been invited to his first party. Before he goes, you give him careful advice on how to behave. Tell him not to spill anything on his clothes, not to eat too much candy, and to come home early.

   b. You're taking a group of people on a tour through a picture-gallery. You stop before every picture and tell 'em about it. Include such facts as who made the picture, when it was made, when and how the museum acquired it, how much money it cost; also what it represents and just how famous it is. The members of the group will interrupt and ask questions.

   c. You take your uniform to the tailor's to have a stain taken out. He'll ask you how you got that stain. You tell him that your servant was careless and spilled something on you. At that point the tailor'll tell you that what you need is another servant. He'll then start to tell you all about the virtues of his friend Das who wants a job as a servant. Inquire carefully about Das's qualifications.

2. Make up questions and answers on the *Listening In*.

### FINDER LIST

*a*

*arsaTh* sixty-eight

*b*

*baasaTh* sixty-two
*band* locked, closed
*band karnaa* to close something
*band hoonaa* to be closed
*bharnaa* (T) to fill something



Digitized by Google

*č*

*čamčaa* spoon
*čausaTh* sixty-four
*čhāāčhaTh* sixty-six
*čhurii* (*ii*) knife

*d*

*daruaazaa* door
*diuaar* (*ii*) wall

*D*

*Daalnaa* (T) to throw, pour, drop

*f*

*faraš* floor, carpet

*g*

*giraanaa* (T) to drop something

*h*

*haalat* (*-ii*) condition, state of health
*hakiim* doctor

*i*

*iksaTh* sixty-one
*itnaa* see *Word Study*

*j*

*jahāā* see *Word Study*
*jaisaa* see *Word Study*
*jitnaa* see *Word Study*

*k*

*kāāTaa* fork
*khīīčnaa* (T) to draw, to pull
*khulnaa* (N) to be opened
*kunjii* (*-ii*) key

*ķ*

*ķaee* (*-ii*) vomiting
*ķaee karnaa* to vomit

*l*

*lee leenaa* to take
*laTkaanaa* (T) to hang up something

*m*

*makkhan* butter
*meeuaa* nut

*p*

*pāīsaTh* sixty-five
*paRnaa* (N) to fall, to befall, to fall to one's lot

*paRee-gaa* one will have to . . .



Digitized by Google

*patlaa* thin
*pleeT* plate
*piaalaa* cup

*s*

*-saa* see *Word Study*
*sarsaTh* sixty-seven
*sattar* seventy

*š*

*šakkar (-ii)* sugar

*t*

*tabiiat (-ii)* state (of health)
*tasuiir (-ii)* picture
*talaaš (-ii)* search, quest
*talaaš karnaa* to search
*tirsaTh* sixty-three

*u*

*uaaldaa (-ii)* mother
*uaisaa* see *Word Study*
*unhattar* sixty-nine
*utnaa* see *Word Study*

*x*

*xaas* special



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 20

## CITIES OF INDIA

### SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| Smith: | |
| intention | *iraadaa.* |
| I'm going on a trip to India to see some of the famous sights. | *māī kuč mašhuur jaghēē deekhnee-kee liiee hindustaan-mēē safar karnee-kaa iraadaa kartaa hūū.* |
| advice | *salaah.* |
| Tell me where I ought to go. | *mujhee salaah diijiiee kee kahāā jaaūū.* |
| Das: | |
| one and the same, only one | *eek-hii.* |
| You don't want to stay in just one place, do you? | *kiaa aap eek-hii jagaa-mēē rahᵉnaa čaahᵉtee hāī?* |
| Smith: | |
| different | *muxtalif.* |
| No, I want to see a lot of different places. | *nahīī, māī muxtalif jaghēē deekhnaa čaahᵉtaa hūū.* |
| to spend | *xarč karnaa,* |
| salary | *tanxuaah.* |
| But I can't spend too much money because I don't get paid very much. | *leekin māī ziaadaa paisaa nahīī xarč kar saktaa, kiõõ-kee mujh-koo ziaadaa tanxuaah nahīī miltii hai.* |



Digitized by Google

Das:

Simla has a very good climate. *šimlee-kaa mausam bahot aččhaa hai.*

capital — *paaetaxt.*

So in summer it's the capital of the country. *is liiee garmii-mẽẽ mulk-kaa paaetaxt hai.*

government — *sarkaar,*

officer — *afsar.*

And a lot of government officials go there. *aur sarkaar-kee bahot afsar loog uahãã jaatee hãĩ.*

Smith:

near Allahabad — *ilaahaabaad-kee nazdiik.*

Is Simla near Allahabad? *kiaa šimlaa ilaahaabaad-kee nazdiik hai?*

uncle (= father's brother) — *čaččaa,*

business — *beopaar.*

One of my uncles has his (big) business in Allahabad, and I want to visit him. *meeree eek čaččaa-kaa eek baRaa beopaar ilaahaabaad-mẽẽ hai, aur mãĩ un-see mulaaḳaat karnaa čaahᵉtaa hũũ.*

Das:

north — *uttar,*

west — *paččhim.*

Simla's a little to the northwest of Allahabad. *šimlaa ilaahaabaad-see kuch uttar paččhim-kii taraf hai.*

It's in the Himalaya mountains. *himaaliiaa pahaaR-par hai.*

Das:

Does he manage his business all by himself? *kiaa uoo akeelee intezaam kartee hãĩ?*

besides — *-ee alaauaa,*

nephew (brother's son) — *bhatiijaa,*

to manage — *sambhaalnaa.*



Digitized by Google

Smith:

No; he has one of his nephews to help him take care of it. *jii nahĩĩ un-kee alaauaa sab bhatiijaa sambhaaltaa hai.*

Smith:

What kind of city is Allahabad? *ilaahaabaad kaisaa šaher hai.*

(Hindu) prince *raajaa,*
palace *mahel.*
Does any prince have a palace there? *kiaa kisii raajaa-kaa mahel uahãã-par hai?*

Das:

king *baadšaah,*
to have something made *banuaanaa,*
fort *ḳilaa.*
There's a fort that king Akbar had built. *akbar baadšaah-kaa banuaaiaa huuaa ḳilaa hai.*

And there're [some] very old temples and mosques, too. *aur puraanee puraanee mandir aur masjidẽẽ bhii hãĩ.*

Smith:

difference *faraḳ.*
What's the difference between a temple and a mosque? *mandir aur masjid-mẽẽ kiaa faraḳ hai?*

Das:

Moslem, Mohammedan *musalmaan,*
Christian *isaaii,*
church *girjaa,*
worship *ibaadat,*
to worship *iabaadat karnaa.*



Digitized by Google

The difference is that Hindus[1] worship in a temple, [and] Moslems in a mosque, [whereas] (and) Christians [worship] in a church.

*faraḳ iee hai kee hinduu loog mandir-mẽẽ, musalmaan loog masjid-mẽẽ, aur isaaii loog girjee-mẽẽ ibaadat kartee hãĩ.*

god
statue
The temples are full of statues of gods.

*deeotaa,*
*muurat.*
*mandirõõ-mẽẽ bahot deeotaaõõ-kii muurtẽẽ hãĩ.*

Smith:

mostly
Are most of the people Moslems in Allahabad?

*ziaadaa-tar.*
*kiaa ziaadaa-tar musalmaan loog ilaahaabaad-mẽẽ hãĩ?*

Das:

population
equal
There're about equal numbers of both.

*aabaadii,*
*baraabar.*
*doonõõ-kii aabaadii ḳariib ḳariib baraabar hai.*

Smith:

boat
traffic
Is there much boat traffic on the river?

*naaoo,*
*aanaa jaanaa.*
*kiaa nadii-mẽẽ naaõõ-kaa aanaa jaanaa bahot hai?*

Das:

Yes, boats are coming [and] going all the time.

*jii hãã. hameešaa naauẽẽ aatii jaatii hãĩ.*

It takes about four hours to go by boat from Allahabad to Benares.

*naaoo-mẽẽ ilaahaabaad-see banaaras jaanee-kee liiee, taḳriiban čaar ghanTee laglee hãĩ.*

That's a very interesting trip.

*iee bahot dilčasp safar hai.*

[1] That is, not merely 'people of India', but 'followers of the Hindu religion'.



Digitized by Google

on the same day — *usii din.*

And you can come back on the same day. — *aur aap usii din uaapas aa saktee hãī.*

Smith:

south — *dakkhin.*

Is Benares south of Allahabad? — *kiaa banaaras ilaahaabaad-see dakkhin-mẽẽ hai?*

Das:

east — *puurab.*

No, it's to the east. — *jii nahĩī. puurab-kii taraf hai.*

situated — *aabaad.*

Benares is (situated) on the bank of the Ganges, too. — *banaaras bhii gangaa-kee kinaaree-par aabaad hai.*

pilgrimage (Hindu religion) — *tiirath,*

to bathe — *nahaanaa.*

Many thousands of Hindus go to Benares on pilgrimages and bathe in the Ganges. — *tiirath-kee liiee, bahot-see hinduu loog banaaras jaatee hãī, aur gangaa-mẽẽ nahaatee hãī.*

belief — *etḳaad,*

paradise (Hindu) — *baikunth.*

They believe that if they bathe in the Ganges, they will go to heaven. — *iee un-kaa etḳaad hai, kee gangaa-mẽẽ nahaanee-see uoo baikunth-mẽẽ jaaẽẽ-gee.*

## Numbers

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| seventy-one | *ikhattar,* | seventy-six | *čhiattar,* |
| seventy-two | *bahattar,* | seventy-seven | *satattar,* |
| seventy-three | *tehattar,* | seventy-eight | *aThattar,* |
| seventy-four | *čauhattar,* | seventy-nine | *uniaasii,* |
| seventy-five | *pačhattar,* | eighty | *assii.* |



Digitized by Google

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. CERTAIN NOUNS IN *-AA* AND *-II*

1. *xudaa-kii meherbaanii* '(through) God's mercy, thank Heaven'
*meeree eek čačča-kaa beopaar* 'the business of one of my uncles'
*deeotaaõõ-kii muurtẽẽ* 'Gods' images'
*kisii raajaa-kaa mahel* 'some prince's palace'

It was pointed out that some MASCULINE nouns, though ending in *-aa* for the nominative singular, do NOT change their ending into *-ee* and *-õõ: amriikaa-see* 'from America' vs. *kalkattee-see* 'from Calcutta'. In other words, *amriikaa* is treated like *ghar(-see)*, *sipaahii(-see)* in that its ending does not change; it merely so happens that the final sound is *-aa* (rather than *-r*, *-ii*).

Here are a few other masculine nouns in *-aa* which behave like *amriikaa* rather than like *laRkaa* (note the oblique plural in *-aaõõ*):

| | |
|---|---|
| *uahãã-kaa raajaa* | 'the prince of that place, the prince there' |
| *uahãã-kee raajaa-koo* | 'to the prince there' |
| *uahãã-kee raajaa tiin hãĩ* | 'the princes there are three' |
| *uahãã-kee raajaaõõ-kaa mahel* | 'the palace of the princes there'. |

This is true of *xudaa* 'God', *raajaa* 'Hindu prince', *mahaaraajaa* (a title for certain Hindu rulers), *deeotaa* 'god's image, a god' and a few other masculine nouns.

*čačča* (or *čačaa*) 'father's brother, uncle,' *daadaa* 'paternal grandfather', *naanaa* 'maternal grandfather' and other similar words usually have the changing endings in the plural, but *-aa-* for the oblique singular:

| | |
|---|---|
| *meeree čačča-koo* | 'to my uncle' |
| *meeree čačča* | 'my uncles' |
| *meeree ččaččõõ-koo* | 'to my uncles' |



Digitized by Google

2. There is a group of FEMININES ending in *-aa:*

| | |
|---|---|
| *jagaa* | 'its place' |
| *subaa* | 'morning' |
| *uajaa* | 'reason' |
| *taraa* | 'manner' |
| *dafaa* | 'time' |

The plural forms of *jagaa* and *subaa* (the others are not used in the plural) are *jaghẽẽ*, *subhẽẽ*, *jaghõõ-(koo)*, *subhõõ(-tak)*. In the singular, some speakers use forms with . . . *ee* or . . . *ah*$^{e}$ (instead of . . . *aa*) for both the straight and oblique case:

| | |
|---|---|
| *us-kii jagaa (jagee, jagah*$^{e}$*)* | 'its place' |
| *us-kii jagaa (-ee, -ah*$^{e}$*)-mẽẽ* | 'in its place' |
| *us-kii jaghẽẽ* | 'its places' |
| *us-kii jaghõõ-see* | 'from its places' |

*gangaa* 'Ganges', *hauaa* 'air, wind' and *duniiãã* 'world' are, however, regular feminines: *baʀii hauaa-see* 'through a stray wind'; *hauaaẽẽ* 'winds', etc.).

3. There are also ADJECTIVES and other kinds of words ending in *-aa* (*-ãã*), which do NOT change their endings. These include the numbers from *giaaraa* to *aTHaaraa*, *paidaa* (in *paidaa karnaa* or *hoonaa*) 'existent', *ziaadaa* 'more, much, many', *sauaa* 'quarter past' (and, of course, words like *hameešaa* 'always', *iahãã* 'here', *uahãã* 'there'):

| | |
|---|---|
| *soolaa gaaẽẽ* | 'sixteen cows' |
| *makaaii paidaa huuii* | 'corn grew' |
| *hameešaa-kee kapʀee* | 'the clothes which are always worn' |

Remember also the many adjectives like *hindustaanii* 'Indian', *xaakii* 'brown', where the *-ii* is a necessary part of all the forms of the word rather than the feminine ending.



Digitized by Google

## B. *NAAOO*

| | |
|---|---|
| *naaoo-mẽẽ* | 'in a (river-)boat' |
| *naauẽẽ aatii jaatii hãĩ* | 'boats go back and forth' |
| *naaõõ-kaa aanaa jaanaa* | 'traffic of boats' |

The plural of *naaoo* 'boat' is *naauẽẽ* 'boats', *naaõõ-(kaa)* '(of) the boats'. (Compare the forms of *gaaõõ* 'village' and *gaaee* 'cow').

## C. 'THE SAME'; *-HII*

1. *aap usii din uaapas aa saktee hãĩ.* 'you may come back on the (that) same day'.

2. *eek-hii jagaa-mẽẽ* 'in one and the same place'

1. An element *-(h)ii* or *-(h)ĩĩ* can be added to *iee* 'this' or *uoo* 'that'. The resulting forms mean 'the same'. They look as follows:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| SG. | STRAIGHT | *iehii, uohii kamraa* | 'the same room' |
| | OBLIQUE | *isii, usii saRak-par* | 'on the same road' |
| PL. | STRAIGHT | *iehii, uohii narangiiãã* | 'the same oranges' |
| | OBLIQUE | *inhĩĩ, unhĩĩ ghooRõõ-par* | 'on the same horses' |

2. *-hii* 'just, exactly' can also be added to a number of other words. Note especially *eek-hii* 'one and the same', *aisaa-hii* and *uaisaa-hii* 'just such'.

The two examples show the difference that exists between the meanings of *eek-hii* and *uohii* (*iehii*). *eek-hii* means 'the same', speaking of something which has not been mentioned before: *eek-hii jagaa* means 'ONE AND THE same place'. *uohii* and *iehii* identify something as being the same as something mentioned already: *usii din* means on THAT same day' (identical with the one which has been named or described). In *eek-hii din* the emphasis would be on 'ONE AND the same day (and not two different days)'.



Digitized by Google

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Answer the following questions:

1. *šimlaa kahãã hai.*
2. *šimlee-kaa mausam kaisaa hai.*
3. *kiaa šimlaa hameešaa hindustaan-kaa paaetaxt hai?*
4. *kiaa ilaahaabaad himaaliiaa pahaaR-kee nazdiik hai?*
5. *himaaliiaa pahaaR kahãã hai.*
6. *ilaahaabaad-mẽẽ kaun-sii mašhuur imaartẽẽ hãĩ.*
7. *kiaa ilaahaabaad gangaa-kee kinaaree-par aabaad hai?*
8. *joo ḳilaa ilaahaabaad-mẽẽ hai uoo kis-nee banuaaiaa.*
9. *kiaa mandir aur girjee-mẽẽ kuch faraḳ hai?*
10. *musalmaan loog kahãã ibaadat kartee hãĩ.*
11. *kiaa ziaadaa isaaii loog hindustaan-mẽẽ rahᶜtee hãĩ?*
12. *kiaa hindustaan-kii aabaadii amriikaa-kee baraabar hai?*
13. *naaoo-mẽẽ ilaahaabaad-see banaaras jaanee-kee liiee kitnaa uaḳt lagtaa hai.*
14. *kiaa banaaras hindustaan-kee dakkhin-mẽẽ hai?*
15. *bahot-see hinduu loog kis liiee banaaras jaatee hãĩ.*
16. *joo loog gangaa-mẽẽ nahaanee-kee liiee banaaras jaatee hãĩ un-kaa kiaa etḳaad hai.*

2. Give the Hindustani equivalent of the following sentences:

1. They read the same book.
2. I want a coat of the same color.
3. She went to the same place.
4. He got the same medicine.
5. We like the same people.
6. The same people visit us every Sunday.
7. My father goes to the same church.
8. The same window was broken.
9. The same men sent it.
10. How many boats are there on the river?
11. How much money do you charge for these three boats?
12. Are there many princes in India?
13. I visited my uncle.
14. He knows many princes.
15. I never saw a statue of a god.



Digitized by Google

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Plans for an outing.

Aziz: *kal ham-koo čhuTTii milee-gii.*
*too nadii-par safar karẽẽ.*

Ram: *iee bahot aččhaa xiaal hai.*
*ham kahãã jaaẽẽ.*

Aziz: *mujhee isii din uaapas aanaa čaahiiee.*
*is liiee ham iahãã-see bahot duur jaa nahĩĩ saktee.*

Ram: *too raajaa-kee mahel-koo joo nadii-kee kinaaree-par hai jaaẽẽ.*
*mãĩ-nee sunaa kee iee bahot xuubsuurat imaarat hai.*

Aziz: *aččhaa.*
*naaoo-mẽẽ uahãã jaanee-kee liiee sirf DeeRh ghanTee lagtee hãĩ.*
*aur ham andheeraa hoonee-kee pahᵉlee uaapas aa saktee hãĩ.*

Ram: *kiaa ham čaččaa-kii bhii daauat karẽẽ?*
*mãĩ samajhtaa hũũ kee unhõõ-nee iee mahel kabhii nahĩĩ deekhaa.*

Aziz: *jii hãã.*
*mãĩ fauran un-kii daauat karnee-koo jaaũũ-gaa.*

* * *

*kal meeree doost aur mãĩ naaoo-mẽẽ safar karnee-kaa iraadaa kartee hãĩ.*
*ham raajaa-kaa mahel deekhnee-kee liiee nadii-mẽẽ aagee-kii taraf*[1] *jaaẽẽ-gee.*
*kiaa aap hamaaree saath jaanaa čaahᵉtee hãĩ?*

*čaččaa: mujhee afsoos hai, leekin kal mãĩ eek aadmii-see milũũ-gaa, joo banaaras-mẽẽ meeraa beopaar sambhaaltaa hai.*
*meeraa xiaal hai kee us-nee ziaadaa paisaa xarč kiiaa, aur mãĩ us-see kuch kahᵉnaa čaahᵉtaa hũũ.*
*too mujhee safar karnee-kee liiee uaḳt nahĩĩ.*

Aziz: *afsoos-kii baat.*
*šaaed aap duusrii dafaa hamaaree saath jaa sakẽẽ.*

2. On the trip.

Ram: *meeraa xiaal hai kee abhii mahel deekh saktaa hũũ.*

Aziz: *kahãã.*

Ram: *uahãã. nadii-kee us taraf.*

Aziz: *uoo too mahel nahĩĩ. uoo mandir hai.*

Ram: *iee bahot xuubsuurat imaarat hai.*
*kiaa tum jaantee hoo kee kab banii.*

[1] 'downstream'



Digitized by Google

Aziz: *mãĩ nahĩĩ jaantaa, leekin bahot puraanii hai.*

Ram: *kiaa ham uoo bhii deekh saktee hãĩ?*

Aziz: *agar tum mahel-koo jaanaa čaahoo, too aaj hamẽẽ mandir deekhnee-kaa uaḳt nahĩĩ.*

Ram: *too mandir duusrii dafaa deekhẽẽ-gee.*

3. A veteran is looking for a job

Das: *aap kis šaher-kee rahᵉneeuaalee hãĩ?*
*aur kiaa beopaar kartee thee.*

Ram: *mãĩ ilaahaabaad-see hũũ, aur uahãã ḳilee-mẽẽ sarkaar-kaa afsar thaa.*
*us-kee pahᵉlee bahot muxtalif beopaar sambhaaltaa thaa.*

Das: *uoo too bahot dilčasp šaher hai.*

Ram: *baadšaah-kaa banuaaiaa huuaa ḳilaa joo šaher-see dakkhin-puurab Thiik nadii-kee kinaaree-par hai, sipaahiiõõ-see bharaa hai.*
*aur laʀaaii-kii uajaa-see aabaadii bhii ziaadaa hai.*

Das: *rahᵉnee-kaa xarč iahãã kam hai, aur is liiee loogõõ-kii tanxuaahẽẽ ziaadaa nahĩĩ.*

Ram: *Daakʈar-kii salaah-kee mutaabiḳ*[1] *mãĩ aab-o-hauaa-kee liiee iahãã rahᵉnee-kaa iraadaa kartaa hũũ.*

Das: *aab-o-hauaa-mẽẽ too ziaadaa faraḳ nahĩĩ.*
*leekin pahaaʀ šaher-see nazdiik hai, aur uttar paččhim-see ziaadaa-tar ʈhanḌi hauaa aatii hai.*

Ram: *mujh-koo kooii maamulii aur aasaan kaam-kii zaruurat hai, kiõõ-kee sarkaar-see bhii kučh tanxuaah miltii hai.*

Das: *aap fauj-kee afsar hãĩ.*
*aap-koo aččhaa kaam dũũ-gaa.*
*aaraam-see rahᵉnee aur nahaanee-kii jagaa uaḳairaa bhii talaaš karũũ-gaa.*

[1]'according to'

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. You are an automobile salesman. Give a sales talk, telling about the advantages of the particular kind of cars you are trying to sell. Talk about the kind of people who've used this kind of car (princes, army officers, etc.) and about the great things you can expect of it. The customer will ask the appropriate questions.

b. You're a customs official. A boat with a great



Digitized by Google

many Americans has just come in. Ask each one of them the usual questions: where born, when, what they're going to do in India, do they know anybody there, etc. Then go through their luggage to see whether they have any contraband with them.

2. Look at Section C, Exercise 1, and think up similar questions and answers for the *Listening In*.

## FINDER LIST

*a*

*aabaad* situated
*aabaadii* (*-ii*) the population
*afsar* officer, official
*-ee alaauaa* besides . . .
*assii* eighty
*aTHattar* seventy-eight

*b*

*baadšaah* king
*bahattar* seventy-two
*baikunth* paradise
*banaaras* Benares
*banuaanaa* (T) to have something made
*baraabar* equal
*beopaar* business
*bhatiijaa* brother's son

*č*

*čaččaa* uncle (= father's brother)
*čauhattar* seventy-four
*čhiaattar* seventy-six

*d*

*dakkhin* south
*deeotaa* a (Hindu) god

*e*

*etkaad* belief

*f*

*farak* difference

*g*

*gangaa* (*-ii*) Ganges
*girjaa* church

*h*

*-hii* see *Word Study*
*himaaliaa* Himalayas
*hinduu* Hindu

*i*

*ibaadat* (-ii) the worship
*ikhattar* seventy-one
*ilaahaabaad* Allabahad
*iraadaa* plan, intention
*iraadaa karnaa* (T) to plan
*isaaii* Christian



Digitized by Google

*ḳ*

*ḳilaa* fort

*m*

*mahel* palace
*musalmaan* Moslem
*muurat* (*-ii*) statue
*muxtalif* different

*n*

*naaoo* (*-ii*) boat
*nahaanaa* (N) bathe
*nazdiik* near
*-ee nazdiik* near . . .

*p*

*paaetaxt* capital (city)
*pačhattar* seventy-five
*paččhim* west
*puurab* east

*s*

*salaah* (*-ii*) advice
*sambhaalnaa* (T) to manage, supervise
*sarkaar* government
*satattar* seventy-seven

*t*

*tanxuaah* (*-ii*) salary, pay
*tehattar* seventy-three
*tiirath* (*-ii*) pilgrimage

*u*

*uniaasii* seventy-nine
*usii* see *Word Study*
*uttar* north

*x*

*xarč* expense
*xarč karnaa* to spend

*z*

*ziaadaa-tar* mostly



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 21

## GETTING INTO TROUBLE

### SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

Mr. Stone, in charge of a business in an Indian city, appears at the police station.

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| Stone: | |
| inspector | *daaroogaa,* |
| prison | *jeel.* |
| Inspector, do you have one of my men locked up in this jail? | *daroogaa saaheb; kiaa eek meeraa aadmii is jeel-mẽẽ band hai?* |
| Inspector: | |
| Yes, he's [been] here since last night. | *jii hãã, raat-see iahãã hai.* |
| Stone: | |
| crime | *jurm.* |
| What's the charge? | *us-kaa kiaa jurm hai?* |
| Inspector: | |
| on the side of the street | *saRak-kee baazuu,* |
| lying | *paRaa,* |
| to find | *paanaa.* |
| One of my (police)men found him lying on the side of the street last night and brought him here. | *kal raat-koo meeree puliis-kee sipaahii-nee usee saRak-kee baazuu paRaa paaiaa, aur iahãã laaiaa.* |



Digitized by Google

pocket
There was a lot of money in his pocket.

*jeeb.*
*us-kii jeeb-mẽẽ bahot paisaa thaa.*

unconscious
But he was out cold.

*beehooš.*
*leekin uoo bilkul beehooš thaa.*

fear
person
to steal
They were afraid some one might try to steal his money.

*ɒar,*
*šaxs,*
*čuraanaa.*
*ɒar thaa kee šaaed kooii šaxs us-kaa paisaa čuraanee-kii koošiš karee.*

Stone:
guilt
What's he being held for?

*ḳusuur.*
*too us-kaa ḳusuur kiaa hai?*

Can't I take him with me?

*kiaa mãĩ usee apnee saath lee jaa saktaa hũũ?*

Inspector:
trial
No, there'll be a hearing at a quarter past two.

*muḳadmaa.*
*jii nahĩĩ, muḳadmaa sauaa ɒo bajee hoo-gaa.*

Stone:
Why?

*kiõõ.*

to be proved
From what you say you can't charge him with anything.

*saabit hoonaa.*
*joo aap kah'tee hãĩ, is-mẽẽ us-kaa ḳusuur kuch nahĩĩ saabit hootaa.*

liquor
I believe he'd just had too much to drink.

*šaraab.*
*meeraa xiaal hai kee us-nee sirf ziaadaa šaraab pii thii.*



Digitized by Google

theft
local merchant or banker, miser
to collect
(But) he certainly hadn't stolen money.

rather,
(Rather,) he's saved it, penny by penny, like a miser.

Inspector:
to catch
he began to say
let me remain
When my (police)men tried to arrest him, he started an argument and wanted to be left alone.

to fight
And he put up such a fight that my (police)men had to call some other people, to (lit.: who could) help them.

by force
So they had to use force to take him in.

to punch and kick
to kill
But he was so violent he almost killed one of my men.

*čoorii,*
*baniiãã,*
*jamaa karnaa.*
*leekin paisaa čoorii-kaa nahĩĩ.*

*balkee*
*balkee baniiẽẽ-kii taraa us-nee eek-eek paisaa jamaa kiiaa hai.*

*pakaRnaa,*
*uoo kahᵉnee lagaa,*
*mujhee rahᵉnee doo.*
*jab meeree sipaahiiõõ-nee us-koo pakaRnee-kii kooširš kii, too uoo kahᵉnee lagaa kee mujhee iahãã rahᵉnee doo.*

*laRnaa.*
*aur uoo itnee zoor-zoor-see laRnee lagaa, kee meeree sipaahiiõõ-koo duusree loogõõ-koo bulaanaa huaa joo un-kii madad kar sakee.*

*zabardastii-see.*
*is taraa unhõõ-nee us-koo zabardastii-see pakRaa.*

*haathaa-paaii karnaa,*
*maar Daalnaa.*
*leekin uoo aisii haathaa-paaii karnee lagaa, kee us-nee ḳariib ḳariib meeree eek aadmii-koo maar Daalaa.*



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| foot | *pair,* |
| injury | *čooT,* |
| to get hurt | *čooT lagtii hai.* |
| And he hurt his left foot. | *aur us-kee baaēē pair-mēē čooT lagii.* |
| Stone: | |
| to arrest | *giraftaar karnaa.* |
| Please let me talk to the man who arrested him. | *jis aadmii-nee giraftaar kiiaa, mujh-koo us-see baatčiit karnee diijiiee.* |
| Inspector: | |
| You can't talk to the man who made the arrest. | *giraftaar karneeuaalee-see aap baatčiit kar nahīī saktee.* |
| against the law | *ķaanuun-kee xilaaf.* |
| That's against the law. | *iee ķaanuun-kee xilaaf hai.* |
| the lawyer | *uakiil,* |
| right, privilege | *axtiaar.* |
| But your lawyer can. | *leekin aap-kee uakiil-koo axtiaar hai.* |
| Stone: | |
| Can I talk to the man who's locked up? | *joo aadmii band hai kiaa mãī us-see bool saktaa hūū?* |
| Inspector: | |
| That's all right with me. | *meerii taraf-see too Thiik hai.* |

* * *

In the jail.

| | |
|---|---|
| Stone: | |
| How do you feel? | *tumhaarii tabiiat kaisii hai?* |



Digitized by Google

Jack:

leg
I hurt my leg. *Tããg.*
*Tããg-mẽẽ kuch čooT lagii.*

otherwise
But otherwise I'm all right. *uarnaa.*
*uarnaa mãĩ aččhaa hũũ.*

When'll the hearing be? *muḳadmaa kab hoo-gaa.*

Stone:

This afternoon. *aaj doo paher.*

misfortune
I think you've got yourself in a jam. *musiibat.*
*meeraa xiaal hai kee tum musiibat-mẽẽ hoo.*

advice *raaee,*
to obey *maannaa.*
Here's what you'd better do: *meerii raaee naamoo.*

(deputy) judge *DipTii,*
falsehood *jhuuT.*
Tell the judge the whole truth and don't lie! *DipTii saaheb-see sab sač-sač kahᵉ doo aur kuch jhuuT na-booloo.*

a fine *jurmaanaa.*
You may get off with a fine. *šaaed tum-koo sirf jurmaanaa hoo-gaa.*

## Numbers

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| eighty-one | *ikkiaasii,* | eighty-six | *čhiaasii,* |
| eighty-two | *baiaasii,* | eighty-seven | *sattaasii,* |
| eighty-three | *teeraasii,* | eighty-eight | *aThaasii,* |
| eighty-four | *čauraasii,* | eighty-nine | *nauaasii,* |
| eighty-five | *pačaasii,* | ninety | *nabbee,* or *nauuee.* |



Digitized by Google

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. NASALIZED ENDINGS

1. *baaĩĩ taraf* 'to the left'
   *baaẽẽ pair-mẽc* 'in the left foot
2. *baniiẽẽ-kii taraa* 'like a miser'

1. In Unit 13 you were told that there are certain adjectives ending in *-ãã* which behave like other adjectives with changing endings in *-aa*, *-ee*, *-ii*, except that the endings are pronounced with nasalization. Examples are the "-th"-adjectives made from numbers, such as *pããcuãã* (*-ẽẽ*, *-ĩĩ*) 'fifth'. To this group belongs also the adjective *baaiãã* 'left'.

*baaĩĩ khiʀkii* 'the window to the left'
*baaiãã daruaazaa* 'the door to the left'
*baaẽẽ gharõõ-see* 'from the houses to the left'

Many people also use *daaiãã* instead of *dahᵉnaa* 'right'. The forms of this word rime, of course, with *baaiãã*.

2. Note also the masculine noun *baniiãã* 'local merchant, village grocer, banker, miser', which behaves like any other masculine noun in *-aa* with changing endings, except that all endings are spoken with nasalization:

*baniiãã kahãã hai* 'where is the merchant'
*baniiẽẽ-see milaa* 'he met the merchant'
*is gaaõõ-mẽẽ kitnee baniiẽẽ hãĩ* 'how many grocers are there in this village?'
*baniiõõ-nee bahot šakkar beečii* 'the grocers sold much sugar'

### B. OBLIQUE OF THE INFINITIVE WITH *LAGNAA*, *DEENAA*

*khaanee lagaa* 'he sat down and ate'
*laʀnee lagaa* 'he started fighting'



Digitized by Google

*haathaa-paaii laʀnee lagaa* 'he started kicking and punching'
*us-see baatčiit karnee diijiiee* 'allow me to talk to him, let me talk to him'

*lagnaa* in the meaning 'to start, set out, get into . . .' and *deenaa* in the meaning 'to allow, let' are preceded by the oblique of the infinitive (in *-nee*).

Remember that *deenaa* is transitive, while *lagnaa* is neuter:

*mãĩ paʀhnee lagtii hũũ* 'I start reading (woman)' (= *mãĩ paʀhnaa šuruu kartii hũũ*)
*mãĩ paʀhnee lagii* 'I started reading' (= *mãĩ-nee paʀhnaa šuruu kiiaa*)

*mujhee baal kaṬaanee nahĩĩ deetaa* 'he does not let me get a haircut' (= *baal kaṬaanee-kii ijaazat nahĩĩ deetaa*)
*us-nee mujhee baal kaṬaanee na-diiaa* 'he did not let me get a haircut' (= *us-nee mujhee baal kaṬaanee-kii ijaazat na-dii*)

Note: An English phrase such as 'LET ME try . . .' may imply two things which are expressed differently in Hindustani:

*koošiš karũũ* 'let me try it = I should like to try it'
*koošiš karnee diijiiee* 'let me try it = permit me to try it.'

Note: *saknaa* 'to be able to; (I, etc.) can' is usually preceded by the STEM of a verb: *bool na-sakii* 'she could not speak'. It is, however, also found (with the same meaning) preceded by the oblique of the infinitive in *-nee*, just like *lagnaa* and *deenaa: kaam karnee na-sakii* 'she could not work'; *boolnee saktaa hai* 'he can speak'.



Digitized by Google

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences:

1. *meeraa baa------ haath TuuT gaiaa.*
2. *us-kee baa------ juutee-mẽẽ čheed hai.*
3. *us-kee da------ juutee-see ba ------ baRaa hai.*
4. *uoo gaa------ čaah$^{e}$taa hai.*
5. *uoo gaa------ lagaa.*
6. *uoo gaa------ nahĩĩ saktaa.*
7. *unhõõ-nee us-koo gaa------ diiaa.*
8. *us-nee khaa------ šuruu kiiaa.*
9. *uoo us-koo andar jaa------ deetee haĩ.*
10. *agar aap mujhee jaa------ dẽẽ too mãĩ čup rahũũ-gaa.*

2. Answer briefly the following questions:

1. *joo sipaahii band thaa uoo kab-see jeel-mẽẽ thaa.*
2. *puliis-kee sipaahiiõõ-nee us-koo kahãã paaiaa.*
3. *jab puliis-kee sipaahiiõõ-nee us-koo paaiaa uoo kiaa kartaa thaa.*
4. *kiaa iee sipaahii ġariib aadmii thaa?*
5. *puliis-kee sipaahii usee kiõõ jeel-koo lee jaanaa čaah$^{e}$tee thee.*
6. *kiaa us-koo giraftaar karnaa aasaan thaa?*
7. *jab puliis-kee sipaahiiõõ-nee us-koo pakaRnee-kii koošiš kii, too kiaa huuaa.*
8. *muḳadmaa kis liiee huuaa.*
9. *kiaa aap-kaa xiaal hai kee us-kaa jurm bahot saxt thaa?*
10. Stone *giraftaar karneeuaalee-see kiõõ baatčiit na-kar sakee.*
11. *kiaa sipaahii-koo kuč̌h čooT lagii?*
12. Stone-*nee sipaahii-koo kiaa raaee dii.*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Mr. Das before the Deputy Judge.

DIPTII: *is adamii-kaa jurm kiaa hai.*

*daarooɡaa: us-kaa jurm iee hai, kee us-nee mooTar itnii teez čalaaii, kee is kisaan-kaa ghooRaa maar Daalaa.*

DIPTII: *kiaa kisii-nee deekhaa?*

*daarooɡaa: sirf kisaan-nee.*

DIPTII: *mujh-koo sab sač-sač kahᵉ diijiiee.*
*aap kiõõ itnii teez čalaatee thee.*
*kiaa aap-nee ziaadaa šaraab pii thii?*

Das: *jii nahĩĩ janaab.*
*mãĩ-nee kabhii nahĩĩ šaraab piitaa.*
*mãĩ mooTar itnii teez čalaataa thaa, kiõõ-kee meeraa eek bhaaii joo amriikaa-see aaiaa huaa hai, aaj doo paher kalkattee-mẽẽ pãhᵒčee-gaa.*
*uoo battiis saal guzree amriikaa-koo gaiaa aur us uaḳt-see mãĩ us-koo nahĩĩ milaa.*
*is liiee jaldii-see kalkattee-koo jaanee-kii koošiš kii.*

DIPTII: *kiaa aap jaantee hãĩ kee teez čalaanee-mẽẽ bahot xatraa hai?*

Das: *jii hãã. mãĩ jaantaa hũũ.*

DIPTII: *too mujh-koo bataaiiee kee kiaa huuaa.*

Das: *mãĩ nahĩĩ jaantaa janaab.*
*mãĩ-nee ghooRaa bilkul nahĩĩ deekhaa.*

DIPTII: *aap-koo jurmaanaa deenaa hoo-gaa.*

Das: *aččhaa.*
*leekin mujhee ab kalkattee-koo jaanee diijiiee.*
*kiõõ-kee meeraa bhaaii meeraa intezaar kar rahaa hai.*

DIPTII: *aap jaa saktee hãĩ.*
*leekin bahot hušiaarii-see čalaaiiee.*

Das: *mãĩ aap-kii raaee maanũũ-gaa.*

2. Aziz is buying a car.

Aziz: *mãĩ hindustaan-see hũũ, aur eek mooTar xariidnaa čaahᵉtaa hũũ.*

Jack: *čhooTii iaa baRii; kis ḳisim-kii.*

Aziz: *aap-kii kiaa raaee hai.*

Jack: *iee aap-koo axtiaar hai.*[1]

Aziz: *un-mẽẽ kiaa faraḳ hai.*

[1] 'That's up to yourself'.



Digitized by Google

Jack: *faraḳ iee hai kee čhooTii gaaRii halkii hai, aur Takkar khaanee-see čooT lagnee-kaa Dar hai.*
*uarnaa uoo mãh[e]gii nahĩĩ aur Thiik hai.*

Aziz: *baRii gaaRii ghanTee-mẽẽ kitnii duur jaatii hai.*

Jack: *iee aap-kee baazuu-uaalii[1] gaaRii ghanTee-mẽẽ assii miil[2] jaatii hai.*
*bahot bhaarii hai, aur us-mẽẽ kuch musiibat nahĩĩ.*

Aziz: *kiaa šaher-mẽẽ teez čalaanaa ḳaanuun-kee xilaaf aur jurm hai?*

Jack: *jii hãã. puliisuaalee-koo aur giraftaar karnee-kaa axtiaar hai.*
*šaraab pii-kar gaaRii čalaanee-see, us šaxs-koo ḳusuur saabit hoonee-see jurmaanaa deenaa, iaa jeel-mẽẽ jaanee-kaa Dar hai.*

Aziz: *gaaRii-mẽẽ Takkar lagnee aur us-kee čoorii hoonee[3]-kii baabat kiaa kuch kar saktee hãĩ?*

[1] 'which is next to you'
[2] 'miles'.
[3] *čoorii hoonaa* 'to get stolen'.

Jack: *hamaaraa uakiil uoo sab Thiik kar dee-gaa.*

Aziz: *kiaa gaaRii čalaanee-kee liiee daaroogaa iaa DipTii-see ijaazat leenee-kii zaruurat hai?*

Jack: *kiaa aap čalaanaa jaantee hãĩ?*

Aziz: *sirf thooRaa thooRaa.*

Jack: *hamaaraa eek xaas šaxs aap-koo gaaRii čalaanaa sikhaaee-gaa.*
*us-kee baad daaroogaa ijaazat dee-gaa.*

Aziz: *leekin mãĩ sab paisaa abhii nahĩĩ dee saktaa.*

Jack: *hamaaraa dastuur iee hai, kee aadhaa paisaa abhii leetee hãĩ.*

Aziz: *too mãĩ aap-kee baazuu-kii uoo baRii gaaRii xariidũũ-gaa.*

Jack: *šauḳ-see janaab. das minaT-kee liiee daftar-mẽẽ aaiiee.*
*uakiil sab taiiaar kar dee-gaa.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. There has been an accident. The policeman arrives at the scene, questions some of the witnesses, and finally arrests one of the drivers. Both drivers and each one of the witnesses will give his version of the accident, including just what he was doing there at the time.

   b. The owner of a store thinks that someone has stolen some of his stock. He accuses someone, who



Digitized by Google

immediately tries to convince him of his innocence. The police have to come in to settle the matter.

c. You go to the police station to report the loss of a considerable sum of money. Give all the details: when and where you noticed the loss, where you might have lost it, whether it could have been stolen, etc.

2. Go through the *Listening In* once more, and answer the following questions:

a. *joo daas-nee kiiaa thaa, kiaa uoo daarooɡaa-nee xud deekhaa?*
*daas-kaa jurm kiaa hai.*
*kis-nee deekhaa.*
*daas-nee mooTar kis taraa čalaaii.*
*daas-kee bhaaii kahãã hãĩ, aur maamulii taur-par kahãã rahᵉtee hãĩ.*
*daas apnee bhaaii-koo kitnii dafaa milaa.*
*daas kahãã-par jaaneeuaalaa thaa.*
*kiaa DipTii us-koo jeel-mẽẽ bheejtaa hai?*
*us-kee baad daas kiaa karee-gaa.*

b. *baatčiit kahãã hootii hai.*
*Jack-kaa kaam kiaa hai.*
*kiaa aziiz čalaanaa jaantaa hai?*
*mooTar čalaanee-kee liiee kis ķisim-kii ijaazat-kii zaruurat hai.*
*kiaa mooTar xariidtaa hai?*
*kitnaa nakd paisaa deenaa čaahiiee.*
*daftar-mẽẽ kis liiee jaatee hãĩ.*

## FINDER LIST

*a*

| | |
|---|---|
| *aThaasii* | eighty-eight |
| *axtiaar* | right, privilege |

*b*

| | |
|---|---|
| *baazuu* | flank, side |
| *-ee baazuu* | to the side of . . . |
| *baiaasii* | eighty-two |
| *balkee* | rather |
| *baniiãã* | local merchant, banker; miser |
| *beehooš* | unconscious |

*č*

| | |
|---|---|
| *čauraasii* | eighty-four |
| *čhiaasii* | eighty-six |
| *čoorii* (*-ii*) | theft |
| *čooT* (*-ii*) | injury |
| *čuraanaa* (T) | to steal |



Digitized by Google

*d*

*daaroogaa* — police inspector

*D*

*Dar* — fear
*Diptii* — deputy judge

*g*

*giraftaar karnaa* — to arrest

*h*

*haathaa-paaii* (*-ii*) — punching and kicking

*i*

*ikkiaasii* — eighty-one

*j*

*jamaa karnaa* (T) — to collect, save
*jeeb* (*-ii*) — pocket
*jeel* — prison
*jhuuT* — falsehood, lie
*jurm* — crime
*jurmaanaa* — fine

*k*

*kaanuun* — law
*kusuur* — guilt

*l*

*laRnaa* (N) — to fight

*m*

*maarnaa* (T) — to beat
*maar Daalnaa* (T) — to kill
*maannaa* (T) — to obey, listen to, heed
*mukadamaa* — trial
*musiibat* (-ii) — distress, trouble

*n*

*nabbee* — ninety
*nauaasii* — eighty-nine

*p*

*paanaa* (T) — to find
*pačaasii* — eighty-five
*pair* — foot
*pakaRnaa* (T) — to catch
*paRaa* — lying

*r*

*raaee* (-ii) — advice

*s*

*saabit hoonaa* (N) — to be proved
*sattaasii* — eighty-seven



Digitized by Google

š

*šaraab* (*-ii*) liquor, wine
*šaxs* person

*t*

*teeraasii* eighty-three

*T*

*Tããg* (*-ii*) leg

*u*

*uakiil* lawyer
*uarnaa* otherwise

*x*

*-ee xilaaf* contrary to . . .

*z*

*zabardastii* (*-ii*) compulsion, force



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 22

## STORY TELLING

### SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| Das: | |
| you! | *ai.* |
| Come here, son! | *ai laRkee. aa.* |
| to you | *tujh-koo,* |
| story | *kahaanii,* |
| to tell | *sunaanaa.* |
| I'll tell you a story. | *mãĩ tujh-koo eek kahaanii sunaaũũ-gaa.* |
| Anup: | |
| to light something | *jalaanaa.* |
| Shall I put on the light? | *kiaa mãĩ bijlii-kii battii jalaa dũũ?* |
| Das: | |
| No, don't put on the light. | *nahĩĩ. bijlii-kii battii mat-jalaa.* |
| fire | *aag,* |
| to be burning | *jalnaa.* |
| The fire's burning. | *aag jal rahii hai.* |



Digitized by Google

light
And that gives enough light.

Anup:
What's the story about?

Das:
you
If you keep quiet I'll tell you.

monkey
standing on the bank
apple tree.
(Lit. Between) a monkey, who lived in an apple tree on the bank of a river, . . .

crocodile
friendship
. . . (and) was very friendly with a crocodile, who lived in that river, (Lit. there was a great friendship).

he used to go
sweet
he used to give
This crocodile used to go every day to see his friend, and the monkey used to give him some sweet apples.

The crocodile liked to take them to his wife.

*ujiaalaa.*
*aur us-see kaafii ujiaalaa hai.*

*kahaanii kis-kii baabat hai.*

*tuu.*
*agar tuu čup rahee, too mãĩ tujhee sunaaũũ-gaa.*

*bandar,*
*kinaareeuaalaa,*
*seeb-kaa peeR.*
*eek bandar-mẽẽ, joo nadii-kee kinaareeuaalee seeb-kee peeR-par rah$^{e}$taa thaa, . . .*

*magar,*
*doostii.*
*. . . aur eek magar-mẽẽ, joo us nadii-mẽẽ thaa, bahot doostii thii.*

*jaaiaa kartaa thaa,*
*miiThaa,*
*diiaa kartaa thaa.*
*iee magar rooz apnee doost-koo deekhnee-kee liiee jaaiaa kartaa thaa, aur bandar us-koo kuch miiThee seeb diiaa kartaa thaa.*

*magar uoo xušii xušii apnii biiuii-kee liiee laataa thaa.*



Digitized by Google

to such an extent
husband
your

After eating the sweet apples his wife was so happy that she said to her husband: "The heart of your friend, who eats apples every day, must be very sweet.

*is ḳadar,*
*šauhar,*
*teeraa.*

*us-kii biiuii miiThee seeb khaa-kar, is ḳadar xuš huuii, kee us-nee apnee šauhar-see kahaa, kee teeree doosT-kaa dil, joo rooz seeb khaataa hai, bahot miiThaa hoo-gaa.*

I want to eat it.

*mãĩ uoo khaanaa čaah$^{e}$tii hũũ.*

Anup:

And then?

*aur phir?*

Das:

at his place

*apnee iahãã.*

The poor crocodile listened to what his wife said and invited the monkey to his house one day.

*beečaaree*[1] *magar-nee, biiuii-kaa dah$^{e}$naa sun-kar, eek rooz apnee iahãã bandar-kii daauat kii.*

back
middle
then
to weep
weeping bitterly
whole story

*piiTh,*
*biič,*
*tab,*
*roonaa,*
*roo roo-kar,*
*saaraa ḳissaa.*

When the monkey had sat down on the crocodile's back and they had come to the middle of the river, the crocodile wept bitterly and told him the whole story (truthfully).

*jab bandar us-kii piiTh-par baiTh-kar, paanii-kee biič-mẽẽ aa gaiaa, tab magar-nee, roo roo-kar, saaraa ḳissaa sač sač kah$^{e}$diiaa.*

[1] = *bičaaree*



Digitized by Google

forgiveness
to beg, ask for something
And begged to be forgiven.

*maafii.*
*māāgnaa.*
*aur maafii māāgii.*

The monkey said:

*bandar boolaa,*

foolish
"My friend, you are very foolish.

*naadaan.*
*ai doost. tuu bahot naadaan hai.*

branch
My heart always hangs, of course, on a branch of the tree.

*Daal.*
*meeraa dil too hameešaa peeR-kii Daal-par rah°taa hai.*

We'll have to go back and get it.

*phir uaapas jaa-kar laanaa hoo-gaa.*

useless
Without the heart it's useless to go to your house."

*fuzuul.*
*baġair dil-kee, aap-kee iahāā jaanaa fuzuul hai.*

The crocodile brought the monkey back to the bank.

*magar bandar-koo phir kinaaree laaiaa.*

And the monkey climbed up the tree and said: "Somebody stole my heart."

*aur daraxt-kee uupar jaa-kar, bandar-nee kahaa, kee meeraa dil kisii-nee čuraa liiaa.*

So the two remained friends.

*is taraa doonōō doost rahee.*

Anup:
That's a very nice story.

*iee bahot aččhii kahaanii hai.*

leaf
to hide something
When the monkey left his heart in the tree, did the leaves hide it?

*pattaa,*
*čhipaanaa.*
*jab bandar-nee apnaa dil peeR-par čhooRaa, kiaa pattōō-nee čhipaa diiaa?*



Digitized by Google

Das:

Maybe. *šaaed.*

Anup:

wicked *badmaas.*

And that crocodile was very mean. *aur magar bahot badmaaš hai.*

love *mahobbat.*

Why did he love his wife so much that he had to listen to her (words)? *uoo apnii biiuii-koo itnii mahobbat kiõõ kartaa thaa, kee us-kii baat maannaa paRaa.*

Das:

to fear *Darnaa,*

angry *naaraaz.*

He was afraid (that) she might get mad. *uoo Dartaa thaa, kee šaaed uoo naaraaz hoo-gii.*

Anup:

to die *marnaa.*

I'm glad the monkey didn't die. *mãĩ xuš hũũ kee bandar na-maraa.*

## Numbers

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ninety-one | *ikkiaanuee,* | ninety-seven | *sattaanuee,* |
| ninety-two | *baanuee,* | ninety-eight | *aThaanuee,* |
| ninety-three | *teeraanuee,* | ninety-nine | *niniaanuee,* |
| ninety-four | *čauraanuee,* | one hundred | *sau,* |
| ninety-five | *pačaanuee,* | one thousand | *hazaar* |
| ninety-six | *čhiaanuee,* | one hundred thousand | *laakh,* |
| | | ten million | *karooR* |



Digitized by Google

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. VARIOUS EXPRESSIONS FOR "YOU"

1. *agar tuu čup rahee* 'if you keep quiet'
   *tuu bahot naadaan hai* 'you are very foolish'

2. *aa* 'come!'
   *mat-jalaa* 'don't make light'

3. *mãĩ tujh-koo eek kahaanii sunaaũũ-gaa* 'I will tell (to) you a story'
   *mãĩ tujhee sunaaũũ-gaa* 'I will tell (to) you'
   *teeree doost-kaa dil* 'your friend's heart'

1. Besides *aap* 'you' (very polite) and *tum* 'you' (less polite), there is a third word with which to address a person: *tuu* 'you'. It is found in stories, and serves nowadays as a rather rude way of talking to children or to socially inferior persons, and, to some extent, between members of a family. You can see that it is infrequently used.

While both *aap* and *tum* are plural forms (*aap ačchii hãĩ* 'you (woman or women) are well'; *tum ačchee thee* 'you were well') and are used in talking to one as well as to several persons, *tuu* is a SINGULAR pronoun and applies always to ONE person, (several persons on the same level of politeness being addressed as *tum*). Note the verb forms in *tuu hai* 'you are', *tuu rahee-gaa* or *tuu rahee-gii* 'you will stay', *tuu gaiaa* or *tuu gaii* 'you went'.

2. The COMMAND form that goes with *tuu* is equal to the mere verb stem: *aa* 'come', *mat-jalaa* 'don't burn it, don't make light', *sun* 'listen' *čup rah*$^{e}$ 'keep quiet'.

3. The other case forms of *tuu* rhyme with the ones of *mãĩ* 'I': *tujh-see* 'from you', *tujh-par* 'on you', *unhõõ-nee tujh-koo sunaa* 'they heard you'. Instead of *tujh-koo* we also find *tujhee* '(to) you'. (Compare *mujh-par*, *mujh-koo*, *mujhee*.)

Similarly, *tuu* is never combined with *-kaa* (*-kee*, *-kii*); the word for 'your' is *teeraa* (*-ee*, *-ii*): *teeree doost* 'your friend(s)'; *teerii baabat* 'about you'; *teeree paas . . . hai* 'you have . . .'



Digitized by Google

Before *-nee* 'by', the form is *tuu: tuu-nee kiaa kahaa* 'what did you say'? This, again, resembles the forms of *mãĩ;* compare *mãĩ, mãĩ-nee, mujh-see* with *tuu, tuu-nee, tujh-see.*

Compare the various degrees of politeness in:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *aaṗ baRii hãĩ* | *tum baRii hoo* | *tuu baRii hai* | 'you are grown-up (girl)' |
| *aaṗ kiaa karẽẽ* | *tum kiaa karoo* | *tuu kiaa karee* | 'what will you do?' |
| *aaṗ jaantee thee* | *tum jaantee thee* | *tuu jaantaa thaa* | 'you used to know' |
| *aaṗ-nee kahaa* | *tum-nee kahaa* | *tuu-nee kahaa* | 'you said' |
| *aaṗ-see milii* | *tum-see milii* | *tujh-see milii* | 'she met you' |
| *aaṗ-kii khiRkii* | *tumhaarii khiRkii* | *teerii khiRkii* | 'your window' |
| *kiijiiee* | *karoo* | *kar* | 'do it!' |

## B. *-KAR*

*aaṗ-see mil-kar bahot xuš hũũ* 'having met you, I am very glad; I am very glad to have met you'

(*dhoobii-nee*) *us-koo ačchii taraa dhoo-kar daaġ nikaalaa* '(the laundryman) after washing it well, took the stain out; he washed it and took the stain out'

*biiuii seeb khaa-kar xuš huuii* 'the wife, having eaten the apples, was glad; after she had eaten the apples, she was glad; she ate the apples and was glad'

*magar-nee biiuii-kaa kahᵉnaa sun-kar bandar-kii daauat kii* 'the crocodile, having heard the words of his wife, invited the monkey; he heard the words of his wife and invited the monkey'

*magar-nee roo roo-kar ḳissaa kahᵉ diiaa* 'the crocodile, weeping bitterly, told the story; he wept and told the story.'

A verb stem may be followed by *-kar* meaning 'after doing so-and-so . . . ; having done so-and-so . . . ; he did so-and-so AND . . .' The last mentioned way of translating *-kar* phrases into English is of particular importance. *-kar* is frequently used for 'and' in telling stories, explaining events, etc., provided that the two sentences joined by 'and' have the same agent: 'HE washed it and (HE) took the stain out'; 'SHE ate the apple and (SHE) was glad';



Digitized by Google

'HE heard the words of his wife and (HE) invited the monkey'; 'HE wept and (HE) told the story.' The construction does not have to refer to the past tense: *andar jaa-kar sunẽẽ* 'let's go in and listen;' *us-koo lee-kar paisaa dee doo* 'take it and pay for it.'

*-kee* is used interchangeably with *-kar*. After *kar-* 'to do', only *-kee* is used:

*mil-kee* = *mil-kar* 'after meeting; I met and . . .'
*xatam kar-kee* 'after finishing; you will finish and . . .'

## C. *JAAIAA KARNAA*

| | |
|---|---|
| *jaaiaa kartaa thaa* | 'he used to go' |
| *diiaa kartaa thaa* | 'he used to give' |

In these two examples, the verb *karnaa* is preceded by a verb form which looks like the masculine singular of the past tense (*diiaa*). The only exception is *jaaiaa kartaa thaa* (vs. *gaiaa* 'I went').

This form in *-aa* never changes its ending, and always precedes *karnaa*, the whole phrase meaning 'to be used to doing something; to do something habitually':

*tum sooiaa kartee hoo* 'you always sleep'
*hindustaanii boolaa kartii hai* 'she usually speaks Hindustani'
*sunaa kartii thĩĩ* 'we (women) were used to listening'.

## D. COMPOUND VERBS

1. *daftar-mẽẽ rakh diijiiee* 'put it in the office'
*darzii uoo ᴛhiik kar dee-gaa* 'the tailor will fix it'
*rumaal phaᴛ gaee hãĩ* 'the handkerchiefs are torn'
*pleeᴛ lee loo* 'take the plates'



Digitized by Google

*jab paanii-kee biič-mẽẽ aa gaiaa* 'when he came to the middle of the stream'
*saaraa ḳissaa kahᵉ diiaa* 'he told the whole story'
*čhipaa diiaa* 'they hid it'
*dil kisii-nee čuraa liaa* 'somebody stole his heart'

You have encountered phrases consisting of verbs preceded by simple verb STEMS. The most common cases are verb stems before *saknaa* 'to be able to . . .' or before *rahaa hoonaa* 'to be in the process of . . .' as in *khaa saktee hãī* 'they can eat,' *khaa rahee hãī* 'they are now eating.'

The examples assembled above are a little different in nature. There is no appreciable difference in meaning between *karnaa* and *kar deenaa* 'to do' or between *phaTnaa* and *phaT jaanaa* 'to become torn, to come apart.' These combinations cannot be made up freely; some of them occur and others do not. They are, however, very frequent. As a rule, transitive verb stems are followed by *deenaa, leenaa, Daalnaa;* neuter ones by *jaanaa* or *rahᵉnaa* (such as in *soo jaanaa* or *soo rahᵉnaa* 'to sleep').

2. *kiaa mãī bijlii-kii battii jalaa dũũ?* 'Shall I turn on the electric light?' *mat-jalaaoo* 'don't turn it on!'

Where there is no difference in meaning, the compound phrase is decidedly preferred to the simple verb in most types of sentences. However, in connection with *nahĩĩ, na-* 'not;' *na-, mat-* 'don't,' the simple verb is used. Also in more involved phrases, such as before *saknaa* 'to be able to,' the simple form is probably more common. Other examples:

*uahãã rakh doo* 'put it there!'
*uahãã mat-rakhoo* 'don't put it there!'

*mar jaaẽẽ-gee* 'they will die'
*nahĩĩ (na-)marẽẽ-gee* 'they will not die'

3. *darzii-kee paas lee jaaoo* 'take it to the tailor'
*udhaar lee saktee hoo* 'you can take it on credit'
*us-nee eek aadmii-koo maar Daalaa* 'he killed a man'



Digitized by Google

In some instances, the meaning of the compound phrase is NOT quite the same as the one of the simple verb. The simple *leenaa* (or, for that matter *lee leenaa*, as in *pleeT lee loo* 'take the plates!') means 'to take,' while *lee jaanaa* means 'to take somewhere, to carry.' *udhaarnaa* is 'to be in debt' while *udhaar leenaa* is 'to take on credit' (and *udhaar deenaa*, 'to give on credit.') *maarnaa* means 'to beat, strike,' but *maar Daalnaa*, 'to kill.' Note also that *hoo jaanaa* is equal to *hoonaa* in the meaning 'to become, to happen' (*hootaa hai*), but never means 'to be' (*hai*).

4. a. *rumaal phaT gaee* 'the handkerchiefs got torn'
*bandar mar gaiaa* 'the monkey died'
*us-koo aspataal lee gaiaa* 'he took him to the hospital'

In the past tense, these compound phrases are treated as neuter if the final component is neuter. This is important for the few cases where a transitive verb stem precedes a neuter verb, as in our last example: *uoo aadmii us-koo lee gaiaa* vs. *us aadmii-nee us-koo liiaa* (*lee liiaa*). Note that *lee aanaa* means 'to bring,' the same as *laanaa*.

b. *us-nee eek aadmii-koo maar Daalaa* 'he killed one man'
*saaraa ḳissaa kahᵉ diiaa* 'he told the whole story'
*čhipaa diiaa* '(they) hid it'
*dil čuraa liiaa* '(somebody) stole his heart'

In the same way, a transitive verb as the final component makes the entire phrase transitive in the past tense.



Digitized by Google

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Answer the following questions in Hindustani.

1. *bandar kahãã rahᵉtaa thaa.*
2. *rooz rooz magar kiaa kartaa thaa.*
3. *joo seeb bandar magar-koo diiaa kartaa thaa kiaa uoo bahot mazeedaar thee?*
4. *magar uoo seeb kis-kee liiee laataa thaa.*
5. *kiaa magar-kii biiuii seeb pasand kartii thii?*
6. *eek rooz magar-kii biiuii-nee kiaa kahaa.*
7. *kiaa magar-nee us-kii baat maanii?*
8. *too magar-nee kiaa kiiaa.*
9. *magar bandar-koo kis taraa apnee iahãã laaiaa.*
10. *jab doonõõ paanii-kee biič-mẽẽ aa gaee too kiaa huuaa.*
11. *bandar-nee kiaa jauaab diiaa.*
12. *bandar-nee apnaa dil kahãã čhipaaiaa.*
13. *uaapas jaa-kar bandar-nee kiaa kiiaa.*
14. *kiaa magar apnii biiuii-koo bahot mahobbat kartaa thaa?*

2. If you wanted to express in Hindustani, 'he climbed up the tree and said . . .' you might say: *daraxt-kee uupar jaa-kar us-nee kahaa. . . .* Using the same construction (see *Comment* B in the *Word Study*) give the Hindustani for the following sentences:

1. He went outside and called her.
2. He finished his work and went home.
3. He read the book and left it here.
4. She took the money and sent it to me.
5. We drank the wine and got sick.
6. I heard the singing and was very happy.
7. He took a bath and slept.
8. They sat down and talked to us.
9. He fixed the car and left.
10. Let's go to town and see a show.
11. Let's take the picture and hide it.
12. Let's call him and tell him we're here.
13. We'll go by airplane and arrive in the morning.
14. They'll buy the house and stay here.
15. He began to cry and apologized (begged my forgiveness).
16. They spent the money and returned.

Give the Hindustani for the following sentences, using all three forms of address (see *Comment* A in the *Word Study*):

17. When will you come for a meal?
18. Did you know this man?



Digitized by Google

19. Where were you living at that time?
20. How many brothers do you have?
21. Don't drink this water.
22. You never told me.
23. If you stay here, I'll show you the picture.
24. Do you have any cash?
25. If you had listened to my advice, you wouldn't be here now.
26. Is the place where you went far from here?
27. Tell me where your parents live.
28. I want to know whether you'll come, too.
29. Why didn't you sell the house?

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Traveling experience.

*doo liin mahiinee guzree, jab mujhee čhuTTii thii, mãĩ biiuii-kee saath gaaõõ-koo gaiaa.*

*jis hooTal-mẽẽ ham rahᵉnee-kaa iraadaa kartee thee, samandar-kee kinaaree-par hai aur iahãã-see bahot duur hai.*

*uahãã reel gaaRii-see jaanee-kee liiee, das ghanTee lagee.*

*hamaarii gaaRii raat-mẽẽ čhuuTii, aur ham Thiik aaTh bajee subaa-koo pãhᵒčee.*

*hooTal-mẽẽ pahõč-kar ham-nee sunaa, kee hamaaraa sab saamaan khoo gaiaa thaa, too mujhee TikiT baabuu-see boolnee-kee liiee, uaapas isTeešan-koo iaanaa paRaa.*

*sab kissaa sun-kar, us-nee kahaa, kee saaheb; mãĩ aap-kee liiee kuch nahii kar saktaa.*

*too aap-koo apnaa saamaan aanee-kaa inteezaar karnaa paRee-gaa.*

*afsoos-kii baat. too ham-koo hooTaluaalee-see kuch kapRee udhaar leenaa paRaa, kiõõ-kee uahãã kooii kapRõõ-kii dukaan na-thii.*

*kuch dinõõ-kee baad hamaaraa saamaan pãhᵒčaa.*

*ham is jagaa-mee doo haftee-tak rahee.*

*rooz rooz ham samandar-mẽẽ nahaa-kar, dhuup-mẽẽ baiThtee thee, aur ham-nee bahot mazaa kiiaa, kiõõ-kee mujhee pahaaR-kee uupar jaanee-mẽẽ bahot šauk hai. ham doonõõ eek din pahaaR-par gaee.*

*pahaaRõõ-see ham bahot duur deekh saktee thee, kiõõ-kee aasmaan bahot saaf thaa.*

2. Monkey stories.

John: *kiaa iee sač hai, kee hindustaan-mẽẽ bahot bandar hãĩ?*



Digitized by Google

Ram: *iee ᴛhiik baat hai. uahãã hazaarõõ laakhõõ*[1] *bandar hãĩ.*

*uoo bahot badmaaš hãĩ aur čoorii kartee hãĩ.*

*bičaaree kisaan loogõõ-kee miiᴛhee seeb čoorii karkee*[2] *khaatee aur jangal-mẽẽ čhipaatee hãĩ.*

John: *mãĩ-nee sunaa kee baččõõ-koo un-see bahot ᴅar hai.*

Ram: *jii nahĩĩ. bandar is ḳadar naadaan nahĩĩ.*

*uoo baččõõ-kee saath fuzuul doostii aur mahobbat nahĩĩ kartaa, balkee un-kii miᴛhaaii uaḳairaa čuraa-kar peeʀ-kii ᴅaal-par khaataa hai.*

John: *iee meeraa čhooᴛaa laʀkaa hai.*

*is-koo bandar-kee tamaašee-kaa ḳissaa sunnee-kaa bahot šauḳ hai.*

Ram: *bandar-kaa tamaašaa bahot mazeedaar hai, aur baččõõ-koo pasand hai.*

*tamaašeeuaalaa bandarõõ-kiišaadii kartaa hai.*

[1] '(thousands and hundred thousands), lots and lots'

[2] *čoorii karnaa* 'to steal'

*aur šauhar apnii piiᴛh-par biiuii-koo bahot mahobbat-kee saath ghar laataa hai.*

*jab uoo apnee šauhar-see naraaz hootii hai, too kaᴘʀõõ-koo aag-mẽẽ jalaatii hai.*

*phir iee naadaan šauhar kuch miiᴛhii čiizẽẽ deekar apnii biiuii-see maafii mããgtaa aur kahᵉtaa hai, kee teeree baḳair mãĩ mar jaaũũ-gaa.*

*phir doonõõ xušii-xušii kuch gaanaa bajaanaa kartee hãĩ, aur loogõõ-kee paas čaarõõ taraf jaakar, paisaa mãgtee hãĩ.*

*phir biič-mẽẽ baiᴛh-kar bandar apnii biiuii-see kahᵉtaa hai, kee paisaa fuzuul xarč na-karee.*

*is-kee baad bandar loog salaam kar-kee kahᵉtee hãĩ kee un-kaa ghar duur hai aur ujiaalee-mẽẽ uahãã pahõčnaa čaahiiee.*

*baʀaa bandar čhooᴛõõ-koo apnii piiᴛh-par lee-kar jaanaa šuruu hootaa hai, aur baččee loog iee tamaašaa deekh-kar bahot xuš hootee hãĩ.*

*laʀkaa: iee saaraa ḳissaa too magar aur bandar-kii kahaanii-see bhii ziaadaa dilčasp hai.*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. Suppose you are (a) the crocodile (b) the crocodile's wife (c) the monkey. In each case give your version of the story related in the *Basic Sentences*.
   b. The man who was locked up in jail in Unit 21 tells one of his friends about the incident. He tells his adventures that evening before he was arrested, gives his version of the fight and his subsequent adventures in prison.
   c. One of your friends in India has sent you a monkey as a pet. Your wife refuses to keep the animal, so you go around and try to give it to one of your acquaintances. Try to make the animal sound very attractive and tell all about the tricks he can perform.

2. Go through the *Listening In*, 2., and then answer the following questions:

*kisaan loog bandarõõ-see kiõõ naaraaz hootee hãĩ.*

*un-see baccõõ-koo kiõõ ᴅar nahĩĩ.*

*jis tamaašee-kii baabat baatčiit hootii hai, uoo kis ḳisim-kaa hai.*

*us-mẽẽ kitnee bandarõõ-kii zaruurat hai.*

Make up other questions and answers.

**FINDER LIST**

*a*

*aag* (*-ii*) — fire
*ai* — you!
*aтhaanuee* — ninety-eight

*b*

*baanuee* — ninety-two
*badmaaš* — bad, wicked
*bandar* — monkey
*biič* — middle

*č*

*čauraanuee* — ninety-four
*čhaiaanuee* — ninety-six
*čhipaanaa* (T) — to hide something
*čhipaa denaa* (T) — to hide something

*d*

*doostii* (*-ii*) — friendship

*ᴅ*

*ᴅaal* (*-ii*) — branch
*ᴅarnaa* (N) — to fear, to be afraid

*f*

*fuzuul* — useless, idle



Digitized by Google

*ikkiaanuee*

*i*

ninety-one

*jalaanaa* (T)
*jalaa deenaa* (T)
*jalnaa* (N)

*j*

to light something
to light something
to be burning, to be lighted

*kahaanii* (*-ii*)
*karooR*

*k*

story
ten million

*ḳadar* (*-ii*)
*ḳissaa*

*ḳ*

(to such an) extent
story

*laakh*

*l*

one hundred thousand

*maafii* (*-ii*)
*māāgnaa* (T)
*magar*
*mahobbat* (*-ii*)
*mahobbat karnaa*
*marnaa* (N)
*mar jaanaa*
*miiThaa*

*m*

forgiveness
to beg
crocodile
love
to love
to die
to die
sweet

*naadaan*
*naaraaz*
*niniiaanuee*

*n*

foolish, ignorant
angry, annoyed
ninety-nine

*pačaanuee*
*pattaa*
*peeR*
*piiTh* (*-ii*)

*p*

ninety-five
leaf
tree
back

*roonaa* (N)

*r*

to weep

*saaraa*
*sattaanuee*
*sau*
*seeb*
*sunaanaa* (T)

*s*

entire, whole
ninety-seven
one hundred
apple
to tell, relate

*šauhar*

*š*

husband

*tab*
*teeraa*
*teeraanuee*
*tujh-*
*tujhee*
*tuu*

*t*

then
your
ninety-three
see *Word Study*
(to) you
you (see *Word Study*)

*ujiaalaa*

*u*

light (i.e. not dark)



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 23

## THE PEOPLE OF INDIA

### SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| part<br>rule<br>state | *hissaa,*<br>*hukuumat,*<br>*riaasat.* |
| Part of India is under [direct] English rule, and there are some [semi-independent] states, too. | *hindustaan-kaa kuch hissaa angreezii hukuumat-mẽẽ hai, aur bahot-sii riaastẽẽ bhii hãĩ.* |
| reign<br>Moslem prince | *raaj,*<br>*nauaab.* |
| [These] states are governed by Hindu and Moslem princes. | *riaastõõ-mẽẽ raajaa aur nauaab loogõõ-kaa raaj hai.* |
| province | *suubaa.* |
| The English govern in eleven provinces. | *angreezõõ-kaa raaj giaaraa suubõõ-mẽẽ hai.* |
| separate<br>connection | *alag,*<br>*taalluḳ.* |
| Ceylon and Burma used to be part of India, but now they are separate and not dependent on the Viceroy of India. | *siloon aur barmaa hindustaan-mẽẽ thee. leekin ab alag hãĩ, aur un-kaa hindustaan-kee uaaesraaee-see kuch taalluḳ nahĩĩ.* |



Digitized by Google

port
The ports closest to England are Karachi and Bombay.

*bandar-gaah.*
*inglistaan-see sab-see nazdiik bandar-gaah karããčii aur bambaii hãĩ.*

sand
plains
In Rajputana there's a lot of desert, so there aren't so many people there.

*baaluu,*
*maidaan.*
*raajputaanee-mẽẽ bahot baaluu-kee maidaan hãĩ, aur is liiee uahãã-kii ɜabaadii bahot nahĩĩ.*

A lot of people live in the plains to the north.

*bahot-see loog uttar-kee maidaanõõ-mẽẽ rahᵉtee hãi.*

number
fourfold
The number of Hindus is about four times the number of Moslems.

*taadaad,*
*čaar-gunaa.*
*hinduuõõ-kii taadaad musalmaanõõ-see taḳriiban čaar-gunii hai.*

Out of every five persons four are Hindus.

*pããč aadmiiõõ-mẽẽ-see čaar hinduu hãĩ.*

Every fifth person is a Moslem.

*har pããčuãã aadmii musalmaan hai.*

language
everywhere
Hindustani is spoken everywhere in the cities of the North (of India).

*zabaan,*
*sab kahĩĩ.*
*uttar-kee šahᵉrõõ-mẽẽ, hindustaanii zabaan sab kahĩĩ boolii jaatii hai.*

nowadays
famine
At the present time there is a very serious famine.

*aaj kal,*
*ḳahet.*
*aaj kal bahot zoor-kaa ḳahet hai.*

grain
harvest
There wasn't much of a harvest of grain.

*ġallaa,*
*paidaauaarii.*
*ġallee-kii paidaauaarii bahot nahĩĩ huuii.*



Digitized by Google

occupation
to be stopped
The rice that used to come from Burma has been cut off; Burma's now occupied by the Japanese.

*ḳabzaa,*
*ruknaa.*
*barmee-see joo čaaual aataa thaa, uoo japaaniiõõ-kee ḳabzee-mẽẽ hoonee-kii uajaa-see ruk gaiaa.*

flood
to destroy
In lots of places, floods have ruined the crops.

*baaʀh,*
*barbaad karnaa.*
*bahot jagaa, nadiiõõ-kii baaʀh-nee kheetiiõõ-koo barbaad kar diiaa.*

peace
These days there is no peace anywhere in the world.

*sulaa.*
*duniiãã-mẽẽ aaj kal kahīī sulaa nahīī.*

enemy
India is at war with her enemies, too.

*dušman.*
*hinduštaan bhii apṇee dušmanõõ-see laʀaaii-mẽẽ hai.*

to enlist someone
People are not drafted into the Indian army (by compulsion).

*bhartii karnaa.*
*us-kii fauj-mẽẽ loog zabardastii bhartii nahīī kiiee jaatee.*

voluntarily
to enter
They volunteer instead.

*xušii-see,*
*daaxil hoonaa.*
*balkee xušii-see daaxil hootee hãī.*

order
word
All orders in the army are in English (words).

*hukum,*
*lafz.*
*fauj-kee sab hukum angreezii lafzõõ-mẽẽ hãī.*

illiterate
So everybody, literate or illiterate, learns them.

*beepaʀhaa.*
*aur is liiee paʀhaa iaa beepaʀhaa har eek adamii, uoo lafz siikhtaa hai.*



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| instead of a hat | *Toopii-kee bajaaee,* |
| turban | *pagRii,* |
| instead of socks | *moozõõ-kii jagaa,* |
| puttee | *paTTii,* |
| to bind | *bããdhnaa.* |
| Indian soldiers wear a turban instead of a hat, and instead of socks they wear puttees. | *hindustaanii sipaahii Toopii-kee bajaaee pagRii pahentee hãĩ, aur moozõõ-kii jagaa paTTii bããdhtee hãĩ.* |
| important | *zaruurii,* |
| weapon | *hathiaar.* |
| The most important weapon of the Gurkhas is the battle knife. | *goorkhee loogõõ-kaa sab-see zaruurii hathiaar kukrii hai.* |
| Sikh soldiers carry a weapon like a small knife at their sides. | *sikh sipaahiiõõ-kee paas, čhooTii čhurii-kaa aisaa eek hathiaar, baazuu-mẽẽ hai.* |
| drill | *ḳauaaed,* |
| rifle | *banduuḳ,* |
| athletics | *uarziš.* |
| They learn to drill, to shoot a rifle, to exercise, etc. | *ḳauaaed karnaa, banduuḳ-kaa čalaanaa, aur thooRii uarziš uaġairaa siikhtee hãĩ.* |

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. PASSIVE

*hindustaanii zabaan sab kahĩĩ boolii jaatii hai* 'the Hindustani language is spoken everywhere'
*zabardastii nahĩĩ bhartii kiiee jaatee* 'they are not drafted compulsorily'



Digitized by Google

The past participle of a transitive verb may be followed by a form of the verb *jaanaa*, both the participle and the *jaanaa*-form agreeing with the subject in number and gender. The resulting expressions correspond to English phrases such as 'the language IS spoken,' 'they ARE drafted,' (so-called PASSIVES), especially if the AGENT is not mentioned. In other words, for 'Hindustani is spoken by these people,' you would NOT use *jaanaa*, but say *bahot loog hindustaanii booltee hãĩ*. (With regard to the first example, note that *boolnaa*, though mostly a neuter verb, is used as transitive when it means: 'to speak a language.')

Other examples for the past participle plus *jaanaa* are:

*xat likhaa jaataa thaa* 'a letter used to be written'.

*xat likhee gaee* 'letters were written'.

*paanii kabhii nahĩĩ piiaa jaaee-gaa* 'the water will never be drunk'.

If the action of the verb applies to a person referred to by a pronoun (*uoo, iee, joo* etc.), you can do either of two things:

*uoo zabardastii nahĩĩ bhartii kiiee jaatee*

or: *un-koo zabardastii nahĩĩ bhartii kiiaa jaataa* 'they are not drafted by compulsion.'

In other words, the person may either be made the subject of *jaanaa: uoo . . . jaatee hãĩ*, or it may be treated as the object of *kiiaa: un-koo bhartii kiiaa* (*jaataa hai*).

Note that pairs of English expressions such as 'make' vs. 'BE made,' 'use' vs. 'BE used,' are often rendered by two different (though similar) verbs in Hindustani.

*iee khaanaa meeuee-see bantaa hai* 'the dish is made of nuts!

*iee khaanaa meeuee-see banaataa hai* 'he makes this dish with nuts'.

*kitnaa saabun lagtaa hai* 'how much soap is used?'

*kitnaa saabun lagaatii hai* 'how much soap does she use?'



Digitized by Google

## B. 'SIMILAR TO . . . ; MUCH LIKE'

1. *čhooTii čhurii-kaa aisaa eek hathiaar* 'a weapon like a small knife'.

Any adjective, including of course *-kaa*, may be followed by *aisaa* 'similar to . . . , somewhat like . . .' (*jaisaa* and the simple *-saa* which you know already in such phrases as *čhooTaa-saa* are used in much the same way). Both the adjective and *aisaa* (*jaisaa*, *-saa*) agree with the noun which they describe. Examples:

*jeel-kaa aisaa ghar* 'a jail-like house'
*jaaRee-kee buxaar-kii aisii biimaarii* 'an illness somewhat like malaria'.
*bas-kii aisii gaaRiiãã* 'cars much like busses'.

*-aa aisaa* describes or refers to a noun; in this it works like an adjective. The phrase *-ii taraa*, on the other hand, usually tells you HOW something is DONE or HOW it WORKS; in other words, it is more likely to modify a verb or verb expression: *iee gaaRiiãã basõõ-kii taraa jaatii hãĩ* 'These cars GO like busses'.

## C. MANNER

1. *mooTar itnii teez čalaaii* 'he drove the car at such a speed . . .'
2. *safar kaisee kiiaa* 'how did you (etc.) travel'
3. *aččhii taraa dhooee* 'he (she) should wash them well'
4. *aam taur-par* 'usually, as a rule'.
5. *xušii-see* 'gladly, lit. with joy'.

These five examples show a few of the many ways in which manner is expressed. Hindustani has no simple device comparable to the English *-ly* which makes adjectives usable to answer the question HOW, IN WHICH FASHION an action is performed. All we can do here is paraphrase the above examples. There is no general rule which tells you which expression to choose.



Digitized by Google

The first example has the adjective phrase *itnii teez* agree with the object "the car, such a fast one, was driven". The speaker actually speaks about a fast car rather than about driving fast. This device is used, incidentally, when you say somebody speaks a language "well" or "badly"; what you really say is 'he speaks Hindustani as a good one, good Hindustani': *ačchii booltii hai.* (Names of languages are feminines, like *zabaan*, the word for 'language'). In the second example we have the masculine oblique. The third and fourth are more explicit: *ačchii taraa* is literally 'in a good fashion', *aam taur-par* 'by the common way'. Note that *aisee* and *is taraa* mean the same thing, namely 'thus, like this'. *taur-par* appears in *maamulii taur-par* 'usually', *xaas taur-par* 'in a special way, particularly'. The fifth example shows a noun indicating the quality in question, followed by *-see.* Thus, we have *aasaanii-see* 'easily,' lit. 'with ease', *hušiaarii-see* 'cautiously,' lit. 'with caution'.

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Answer the following questions in Hindustani:

1. *kiaa sab hindustaan angreezii hukuumat-mẽẽ hai?*
2. *riaastõõ-mẽẽ kin-kaa raaj hai.*
3. *angreezõõ-kaa raaj kaisaa hai.*
4. *kiaa barmaa kabhii hindustaan-mẽẽ thaa?*
5. *kiaa aap jaantee hãĩ kee hindustaan-kii aabaadii kiaa hai?*
6. *hindustaan-kee sab-see mašhuur bandar-gaah bataaiiee.*
7. *barmee-see sab-see nazdiik hindustaan-kaa kaun-saa bandar-gaah hai.*
8. *duniiãã-mẽẽ sab-see ũũčaa pahaaR kahãã hai.*
9. *kiaa hinduuõõ-kii taadaad musalmaanõõ-see ziaadaa hai?*
10. *kiaa aap jaantee hãĩ kee kaun-sii zabaanẽẽ hindustaan-mẽẽ bahot mašhuur hãĩ?*
11. *hindustaanii kahãã boolii jaatii hai.*
12. *aaj kal hindustaan-mẽẽ kiõõ bahot zoor-kaa ḳahet hai.*
13. *hindustaan-kee uaaesraaee-kaa naam kiaa hai.*
14. *kiaa abhii hindustaan-kaa kučh hissaa jaapaaniiõõ-kee ḳabzee-mẽẽ hai?*
15. *hindustaan kab-see is laRaaii-mẽẽ aaiaa.*



Digitized by Google

16. *hindustaanii fauj-mẽẽ kitnee aadmii hãĩ.*
17. *kiaa hindustaanii sipaahii-kii uardii amriikan sipaahii-uardii-kii taraa hai?*
18. *un-mẽẽ kiaa farak hai.*
19. *hindustaanii sipaahii-kee paas kis ḳisim-kee hathiaar hãĩ.*
20. *kiaa hindustaan-mẽẽ bahot loog beepaʀhee hãĩ.*
21. *fauj-kee hukum kis zabaan-mẽẽ hãĩ.*
22. *kukrii kis ḳisim-kaa hathiaar hai.*
23. *kiaa bahot-see sikh loog* ('Sikhs') *sipaahii hindustaanii fauj-mẽẽ hãĩ?*
24. *sipaahii kiaa siikhtee hãĩ.*
25. *hindustaan-mẽẽ kis ḳisim-kaa ġallaa paidaa hootaa hai.*

2. Combine each one of the phrases on the left hand side of the page with one of the phrases to the right so as to form one complete sentence. Make sure the sentence makes sense.

1. *agar aap iee kartĩĩ*
2. *jitnaa paisaa čaahᵉtee hãĩ*
3. *jab kahbii bahot zoor-kii hauaa hai*
4. *jaisee sipaahii iahãã ḳauaaed kartee hãĩ*
5. *uakiil bannee-kee liiee*
6. *jahãã kahĩĩ loog mazaa kartee hãĩ*
7. *joo aap čaahᵉtee hãĩ*
8. *agar baariš hoo*
9. *laʀaaii hoonee-kii uajaa-see*
10. *jahãã hindustaanii loog rahᵉtee hãĩ*
11. *agar aap kušiaar hootee*

1. *uahãã hindustaanii zabaan boolii jaatii hai*
2. *mãĩ uahãã rahũũ-gaa*
3. *bahot-see loog banduuḳ čalaanaa siikhtee hãĩ*
4. *uoo mumkin nahĩĩ*
5. *iahãã na-aatee*
6. *uaisee hindustaan-mẽẽ siikhtee hãĩ*
7. *too biimaar na-hootĩĩ*
8. *utnaa mãĩ nahĩĩ dee saktaa*
9. *too baariš hoonee-kaa xatraa nahĩĩ*
10. *ziaadaa paʀhnaa hoo-gaa*
11. *uahãã gaanaa bajaanaa hoo-gaa*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

### 1. More facts on India.

*hindustaan bahot baRaa mulk hai.*

*is-kii aabaadii čaaliis karooR hai.*

*taḳriiban teeraa karooR loog hindustaanii zabaan booltee hãī.*

*hindustaan-mẽẽ tiin baRee šaher hãī.*

*kalkattaa bambaaii aur madraas.*

*dillii uahãã-kaa paaetaxt hai.*

*hindustaan-kii čaar mashuur nadiiãã gangaa jamnaa sindh[1] aur brahamputr hãī.*

*himaaliiaa duniiãã-mẽẽ sab-see ũũčaa pahaaR hai.*

*hindustaan-kee baRee baRee liiDar[2] mulk-kee muxtalif jaghõõ-see hãī.*

*mohandaas gãādhii jii[3] gujraat-kee hãī.*

*nahᵉruu jii ilaahaabaad-kee.*

*alii jinaa bambaaii-kee hai.*

*pahᵉlee uoo bahot baRee uakiil aur amiir thee.*

*sauth afriiḳaa-mẽẽ rahᵉtee thee aur phir hindustaan-koo uaapas aaee.*

*jinaa saaheb musalmaanõõ-kee liiDar hãī.*

[1] 'river Indus.'
[2] 'leaders, statesmen'.
[3] part of the name

*iee bhii bambaii-mẽẽ bahot mašhuur uakiil thee.*

*hindustaan-mẽẽ loog ziaadaa-tar musalmaan aur hinduu hãī.*

*hinduu loog mandir-mẽẽ musalmaan masjid-mẽẽ isaaii girjee-mẽẽ xudaa-kaa naam leetee hãī.*[4]

*musalmaanõõ-kee liiee har jumee-kaa din xudaa-kaa din hai.*

*bahot-see hinduu goošt nahīī khaatee.*

### 2. Effects of the war.

*taḳriiban saaRhee čaar baras-see sab jagaa laRaaii hoo rahii hai.*

*jahaazõõ-mẽẽ bhar-kar loog aur saamaan sab taraf jaataa hai.*

*hindustaan-kii faujẽẽ duniiãã-mẽẽ sab kahīī hãī.*

*sab mulkõõ-kee saath mil-kar laR rahii hãī.*

*hindustaanii sipaahii ziaadaa-tar sikh goorkhee aur paThaan loog hãī.*

*ũũčee afsar loog hindustaanii fauj-mẽẽ angreez hãī.*

*har sipaahii-kee paas xaakii uardii pagRii aur banduuḳ zaruur hai.*

*aaj kal laRaaii hoonee-see aurtõõ-kee moozee bazaar-mẽẽ kam biktee hãī.*

[4] 'worship'.



Digitized by Google

*reešam-kaa milnaa bahot muškil hai.*

*khaanee piinee aur pahennee-kaa saamaan bahot mãhᵉgaa hai.*

*kooii kooii saamaan guzree saal-see tiin gunaa mãhᵉgaa hai.*

*leekin khaanee-kii kooii kooii čiizẽẽ kam hoo jaatii hãĩ.*

*kisaan loogõõ-koo kheetii-mẽẽ kaam karnee-kee liiee aadmii nahĩĩ miltee.*

3. Facts about the Indian Army.

Jack: *kiaa raajaa aur nauaab loogõõ-kii riaastõõ-koo angreezii hukuumat-see kuch taalluk nahĩĩ?*

Das: *goorkhee, raajpuut, aur sikh loogõõ-kii fauj angreezõõ-kii taraf-see uahãã rahᵉlii hai.*

*aur kuch angreezii afsar bhii hãĩ.*

*sirf kooii riaastẽẽ alag hãĩ, jin-kaa uaaesraaee-see kuch taalluk nahĩĩ. siiloon aur barmaa-kee* "governor" *bhii alag hãĩ.*

Jack: *fauj-mẽẽ daaxil hoonee-kee baad sipaahiiõõ-koo kauaaed aur uarziš karaanee-kaa kiaa dastuur hai.*

Das: *bhartii karnee-kee baad un-koo fauj-kee zaruurii hukum, joo angreezii zabaan-kee lafzõõ-mẽẽ hãĩ, sikhaatee hãĩ.*

*baaluu-kee maidaan-mẽẽ banduuk lee-kar dauRnaa aur pahaaõõ-par hathiaarõõ-kee saath jaanaa dušman-koo barbaad kar-kee us-par kabzaa karnaa uagairaa paRhee aur beepaRhee sab sipaahiiõõ-koo siikhnaa zaruurii hai.*

Jack: *kiaa sab sipaahiiõõ-kii uardii eek taraa-kii hai?*

Das: *goorkhõõ-kee alaauaa joo hameešaa kukrii rakhtee aur Toopii pahentee hãĩ, raajputaanaa aur sab suubõõ-kee sipaahii pagRii bããdhtee hãĩ.*

Jack: *kiaa hindustaanii sipaahii hauaaii jahaaz čalaanaa bhii siikhtee hãĩ?*

Das: *un loogõõ-kii taadaad sulaah-kee uakt-see ab čaar-gunii hai. hindustaan-kee muxtalif hissõõ-mẽẽ hauaaii jahaaz-kee bahot maidaan hãĩ.*

Jack: *kiaa hindustaanii loogõõ-koo laRaaii-kee jahaaz-mẽẽ kaam karnee-see dilčaspii hai?*

Das: *bambaii aur karããčii-kee bandar-gaahõõ-par laRaaii-kee jahaazõõ-mẽẽ uoo loog kaam siikhtee hãĩ.*

Jack: *hindustaanii sipaahiiõõ-koo kis kisim-kaa khaanaa pasand hai?*

Das: *un-koo sab kisim-kaa ačchaa khaanaa miltaa hai. guzree saal nadiiõõ-kee baaRh-see gallee-kii paidaauaarii barbaad hoo gaii, aur bahot baRaa kahet huuaa.*

*amriikaa aur duusree mulkõõ-see gallaa aaiaa.*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. Suppose you were in India and somebody asked you, "Just what kind of a country is America?" Try to give an answer to that question. You may mention something about the geography of the country, its present political organization, life in a modern American city, etc. Talk about the things that seem most important to you.

   b. At an Hindu restaurant in New York you meet an Hindu soldier, here on a visit. You get acquainted. After you have asked him how he likes it here, how long he is going to stay, what he plans to do, etc., you get to talking about your respective army-experiences. Compare your basic training, branch of service, present work.

   c. Suppose you were collecting money for the India Famine Relief. Make a brief speech about present-day conditions in India. Describe the distress of the people and end up with a direct appeal to donate money.

2. Make up questions and answers on the *Listening In.*

### FINDER LIST

*a*

*aaj kal* — nowadays
*alag* — separate, independent

*b*

*bããdhnaa* (T) — to bind, tie, wrap
*baaluu* (*-ii*) — sand
*baaRh* (*-ii*) — flood
*-ee bajaaee* — instead of . . .
*bambaii-ii* — Bombay
*bandar-gaah* — port
*banduuk* (*-ii*) — rifle, gun
*barbaad karnaa* (T) — to ruin, destroy
*barmaa* — Burma
*beepaRhaa* — illiterate
*bhartii karnaa* (T) — to enlist someone

*d*

*daaxil hoonaa* (N) — to enter
*dušman* — enemy

*g*

*goorkhaa* — Gurkha (Nepalese soldier)
*-gunaa* — . . . times, -fold
*čaar-gunaa* — four times, four-fold



Digitized by Google

*ġ*

*ġallaa* — grain

*h*

*hathiaar* — weapon
*hissaa* — part
*hukum* — order, command
*hukuumat* (*-ii*) — rule, sovereignty

*j*

*jaapaanii* — Japanese

*k*

*kahĩĩ* — somewhere, anywhere
*karāāčii* — Karachi
*kukrii* (*-ii*) — battle knife

*ķ*

*ķabzaa* — occupation
*ķahet* — famine
*ķauaaed* (*-ii*) — drill, grammar

*l*

*lafz* — word

*m*

*maidaan* — plain, valley, field

*n*

*nauaab* — Moslem prince

*p*

*pagRii* (*-ii*) — turban
*paidaauaarii* (*-ii*) — harvest
*paRhaa* — literate
*paTTii* (*-ii*) — puttee

*r*

*raaj* — reign, sovereignty
*raajputaanaa* — Rajputana
*riaasat* (*-ii*) — state
*ruknaa* (N) — to be stopped

*s*

*sikh* — Sikh
*siloon* — Ceylon
*sulaa* (*-ii*) — peace
*suubaa* — province

*t*

*taadaad* (*-ii*) — number
*taalluķ* — connection

*u*

*uaaesraaee* — Viceroy
*uarziš* (*-ii*) — athletics, exercise

*z*

*zabaan* (*-ii*) — language
*zaruurii* — important, necessary



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 24

## REVIEW

### SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN HINDUSTANI?

*To the Group Leader:* Section A of this unit consists of five conversations to be read to the group by the Guide. If you have no Guide, choose, or have the group choose, one of the members to do the reading. Get someone whose voice and pronunciation are clear and good. The texts of the five conversations are given in the *Guide's Manual* in Hindustani writing, and, in the *Key* part of the *Guide's Manual*, in the *Aids to Listening* used in this (the student's) manual.

See that each member of the group is provided with a sheet of paper and a pen or pencil. Before the first conversation is read, give the group two minutes to familiarize themselves with the five Hindustani questions that are asked about it. Then have the first conversation read, and give them three minutes to write down, IN ENGLISH, a simple answer to each question.

Follow this procedure with each of the five conversations. After the quiz is over, correct it as in units 6, 12, and 18. Call an answer correct only if it shows clearly that the group member really understood both the question asked and the part of the conversation which gave the answer to the question.

This unit is again a review of the work covered up to now. For the most part it is like the other review units. The first section, however, is not a true-false quiz, but a group of five conversations, about which questions are asked. These questions are printed below. Familiarize yourself with the five questions on the first conversation, and then listen carefully as the conversation is read to you. Don't try to write down the answers to the questions while the conversation is being read; either sit still and listen, or at the most just write down a key word for each question. After the conversation has been read, write down, IN ENGLISH, your answer to each question. Make your answers brief and to the point. Then get ready for the next conversation by reading over the next set of five questions. Follow this same procedure with each conversation.

When all the conversations have been read, and you have had a chance to answer all the questions, the guide or Group Leader will go over the answers with you.



Digitized by Google

1st Conversation

1. *husain kaun hai.*
2. *tasuiir kis-nee khīīčii hai.*
3. *meh$^{e}$maan kitnee hõõ-gee.*
4. *kiaa daruaazaa band hoonaa čaahiiee?*
5. *kiaa piaalee čaaee piinee-kee liiee hãī?*

2nd Conversation

1. *aziiz-kaa kaisaa beopaar hai.*
2. *us-kaa beopaar sirf eek jagaa-mẽẽ hootaa hai?*
3. *uoo kaun istemaal kartaa hai?*
4. *un-kee kooii rišteedaar hãī?*
5. *guzree saal kiaa huuaa.*

3rd Conversation

1. Joe *musiibat-mẽẽ kiõõ hai?*
2. *us šaher-mẽẽ kis uaḳt-see hai.*
3. *us-koo uakiil kiõõ na-milaa?*
4. *kiaa muḳadmaa hoonaa* Joe-*kii taraf-see* Thiik *hai?*
5. *jurmaanaa deenaa sakee-gaa?*

4th Conversation

1. *bandar-kaa naam kiaa thaa.*
2. *kiaa magar bandar-kee ḳariib rah$^{e}$taa thaa?*
3. *bandar nadii-kee paas kaisee jaaiaa kartaa thaa.*
4. *peeR kis ḳisim-kaa thaa.*
5. *magar-kii ḃiuii-nee kiaa khaaiaa.*

5th Conversation

1. *amriikaa-mẽẽ kitnee loog rah$^{e}$tee hãī.*
2. *us-kii fauj-mẽẽ sipaahii loog xušii-see daaxil hootee hãī?*
3. *fauj-mẽẽ daaxil hoonee-kee liiee kiaa čaahiiee?*
4. *amriikan afsar loogõõ-koo hameešaa* Toopii *pahennaa čaahiiee?*
5. *kiaa amriikan laRaai-kee jahaaz fauj-kee niičee hootee hãī?*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

Find the Hindustani for the following sentences. (This is individual study.)

1. You'll have to charge as much (money) as I.
2. What's the difference between a church and a mosque?
3. Listen to the advice of the judge!
4. There is a hole in the wall as big as my hand.
5. I'll take as much sugar as I took in the first cup.
6. My uncle lives in the same house.
7. He started kicking and punching.
8. The electric light is on (burning).
9. Do you want to hear a story?
10. He draws pictures exactly the way they tell him in school.
11. There are no images or statues in a mosque.
12. Hindus bathe in the Ganges.
13. The winds here are strong.
14. The inspector didn't let any lawyer see the man who had been arrested.
15. You'll be fined for driving on the right side of the street.
16. I was so happy I could have given (*-neeuaalaa*) him a hundred dollars.
17. There aren't so many good harbors in India.
18. About one person out of four understands Hindustani.
19. He begged to be forgiven.
20. Just what is your opinion?
21. Ceylon is not dependent on the Viceroy of India.
22. The monkey said to the crocodile: "Shall I do this for you?"
23. How much money have you saved?
24. There are still a lot of illiterate people in India.
25. Some women in America wear hats somewhat like turbans.

## SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Group Leader on the sentences in *Section B*, asking various members of the group: ". . . *-koo hindustaanii-mēē kiaa kahᵉtee hāī.*"



Digitized by Google

## SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

Find the Hindustani for the following sentences! (This is individual study.)

1. It seems to me, there is a fire burning somewhere.
2. The population of Bombay is four times that (*-see*) of this town.
3. Which plates are on the table?
4. The pictures should be hung one on top of the other.
5. Pour it in the other cup.
6. Do you plan to go back to India?
7. Only a small part of India has been under Japanese occupation.
8. Are you going back on the same boat?
9. Did you both work in one and the same business?
10. That gun looks a bit like mine, but it isn't (of) the same kind.
11. We used to walk together to and from school.
12. These two states are about equal [in size].
13. Somebody stole the money.
14. Take as many knives and forks as you can, and don't drop any!
15. My nephew got into a fight with some people he didn't know.
16. Mr. Smith has never managed any kind of business.
17. He used to pay the fines for his friends when they were in trouble.
18. Your husband said you were angry.
19. I should like to apologize ('beg forgiveness').
20. Nepal (*naipaal*) is an independent state [in the north of India.
21. The police inspector locked him up in jail.
22. Of course he didn't do anything bad.
23. What's the matter with that little boy?
24. Suppose you let me talk to the grocer of the village
25. This building looks pretty much like our mosque the doors and the windows are (exactly) the same



Digitized by Google

## SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

1. Quiz by the Group Leader on the sentences in section D, asking various members of the group: "*. . . -koo hindustaanii-mẽẽ kiaa kahᵉtee hãĩ.*"

2. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences:

1. *mãĩ aur meeree baap -------hii naaoo-mẽẽ jaaẽẽ-gee.*
2. *iee meeree eek doost-kii tasuiir hai, aur joo kitaab uahãã meez-par hãĩ, uoo* ------ ('the same') *aadmii nee likhii hãĩ.*
3. *j------ paisaa diiaa, utnaa kaafii nahĩĩ.*
4. *meherbaanii-see us aadmii-koo mujh-see kahᵉ------ diijiiee janaab.*
5. *is jeel-mẽẽ kitnee aadmii band ------ .*
6. *us-koo giraftaar kar-kee jeel-mẽẽ band ------ .*
7. *har din ziaadaa šaraab pii------ kartee-thee.*
8. *tumhaaraa juutaa phaT ------ hai.*
9. *čačč--- - ------ baatčiit kiõõ na-kii.*
10. *uoo diuaarẽẽ k------ ũũčii hãĩ.*

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION REVIEW

1. a. You have been to a party in a well-to-do home. Your wife wants to know about the details, menu, table-setting, guests, drinks, conversation, etc.

   b. A Hindu friend of yours is about to go to America. He asks you all sorts of questions on where to go, what to see, where and how to live. You give him a detailed description.

   c. Tell a friend what you know about the geography, communications system, cities, etc. of India.

   d. You are called as a witness in a case where the disorderly conduct of a fellow tourist is involved (drunkenness, singing, annoying other people). You are very embarrassed because you haven't really witnessed what was going on, but you want to testify to your friend's good character. Explain to the judge.

   e. A couple of villagers ask you to keep an eye on one of your men who is suspected of having stolen food from the house near which he lived. You ask



Digitized by Google

about certain details, promise to take care of the complaint, etc. Afterwards you talk to the man involved who protests that he didn't take anything without paying for it.

f. Somebody has asked you to explain the main differences between government in India and in the United States.

g. Tell what you know about Indian agriculture, crops, distribution of the soil, self-sufficiency, famines, importation of foodstuffs, etc.

2. Make up and solve simple problems in arithmetic, including addition, subtraction, and multiplication (using *-gunaa:* e.g., *čhai das-gunee . . .*).



Digitized by Google

# PART FIVE

# UNIT 25

## COMMUNICATIONS

### SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| to sound | *bajnaa.* |
| The telephone's ringing. | *Tailifuun baj rahaa hai.* |
| wrong | *ġalat.* |
| You have the wrong number. | *iee ġalat nambar hai.* |
| to hang up | *Tããgnaa.* |
| Hang up and call again! | *Tããg diijiiee aur phir bulaaiiee.* |
| line<br>busy | *lain,*<br>*masruuf.* |
| The line's still busy. | *lain abhii-tak masruuf hai.* |
| empty | *xaalii.* |
| The line's free. | *lain xaalii hai.* |
| This is Mr. Das' house. | *iee daas saaheb-kaa ghar hai.* |
| Hello! | *janaab;* |
| Who's speaking? | *aap kaun hãĩ.* |
| Is Mr. Das at home? | *kiaa daas saaheb ghar-par hãĩ?* |



Digitized by Google

slowly
Please speak slowly!

Speak a little louder!

Speak clearly!

whither, where to
I don't know where he is.

message
Do you want to leave a message?

Tell him to call me.

spelling
Please spell your name.

to forget
Don't forget to give [him] my message!

to remember something
I'll remember (it).

The telephone is out of order.

past five
I'll call again at ten past five.

twenty minutes to six
I'll stay here till twenty to six.

postoffice
Where's the postoffice?

*aahestaa.*
*aahestaa aahestaa booliiee.*

*kuch zoor-see booliiee.*

*saaf booliiee.*

*kidhar*
*uoo kidhar gaee hãĩ, mãĩ nahĩĩ jaantaa.*

*sandeesaa.*
*kiaa kuch sandeesaa chooʀẽẽ-gee?*

*un-koo kah$^{e}$naa kee mujhee bulaaẽẽ.*

*hijjee.*
*apnee naam-kii hijjee kiijiiee.*

*bhuulnaa.*
*meeraa sandeesaa deenaa mat-bhuulnaa.*

*iaad rakhnaa.*
*mãĩ uoo iaad rakhũũ-gaa.*

*ʀailifuun xaraab hoo gaiaa.*

*pããč baj-kar.*
*mãĩ pããč baj-kar das minaʀ-mẽẽ phir bulaaũũ-gaa.*

*čhai bajnee-mẽẽ biis minaʀ.*
*mãĩ čhai bajnee-mẽẽ biis minaʀ-tak iahãã rahũũ-gaa.*

*ᴅaakxaanaa.*
*ᴅaakxaanaa kahãã hai.*



Digitized by Google

letter
I want to mail a letter.

I want a hundred ten-anna stamps.

envelope
Do you need envelopes too?

ink
pen
Do you have pen and ink?

date
Please tell me what the date is.

mail
I'll send this letter special delivery.

package
Can a package be sent by airmail, too?

weight
I'll weigh it.

two and a half
It weighs two and a half chatank.

heavy.
It's too heavy for air-mail.

light
Only very light packages can go by airmail.

collect.
Can you send it collect?

*čiTThii.*
*mãĩ čiTThii Daalnaa čaah$^{e}$taa hũũ.*

*mãĩ das aaneeuaalee sau TikiT čaah$^{e}$taa hũũ.*

*lifaafaa.*
*kiaa kuč̌h lifaafee bhii čaahiiee?*

*siaahii,*
*ḳalam.*
*kiaa aap-kee paas siaahii aur ḳalam hai?*

*taariix.*
*mujhee bataaiiee kee aaj kaun taariix hai.*

*Daak.*
*mãĩ iee xat xaas Daak-see bheejũũ-gaa.*

*banDal.*
*kiaa banDal bhii hauaaii Daak-see bheejaa jaa saktaa hai?*

*uazan.*
*mãĩ us-kaa uazan karũũ-gaa.*

*aRhaaii.*
*us-kaa uazan aRhaaii čhaTããk hai.*

*bhaarii.*
*iee hauaaii Daak-kee liiee ziaadaa bhaarii hai.*

*halkaa.*
*sirf halkee halkee banDal hauaaii Daak-see jaa saktee hãĩ.*

*bairang.*
*kiaa bairang bheejnaa mumkin hai?*



Digitized by Google

valuable
Are there very valuable things in it?

*ḳiimtii.*
*kiaa us-mẽẽ ɓahot ḳiimtii čiizẽẽ hãĩ?*

to be printed
It's only printed matter.

*čhapnaa.*
*sirf čhapee huuee kaaɠaz hãĩ.*

Is there any way I can send it cheaper?

*kiaa mãĩ uoo kam paisee-mẽẽ bheej saktaa hũũ?*

tax, fee
You'll have to pay two rupees postage.

*mahᵉsuul.*
*mahᵉsuul-kee liiee doo rupaee deenaa hoo-gaa.*

length,
width
Is there any regulation about the size?

*lambaaii,*
*čauʀaaii.*
*kiaa lambaaii čauʀaaii-kaa kuč̌h ḳaanuun hai?*

half
long
wide
This package is half a foot long and seven inches wide.

*aadhaa,*
*lambaa,*
*čauʀaa.*
*iee banᴅal aadhaa fuᴛ lambaa aur saat inč̌ čauʀaa hai.*

freight-train
The postoffice doesn't take packages that weigh more than eight ser; send those by freight.

*maalgaaʀii.*
*joo banᴅal aaᴛh seer-see ziaadaa uazan-mẽẽ hãĩ, uoo ᴅaakxaanaa nahĩĩ leeᴛaa. maalgaaʀii-see bheejoo.*

telegram
Can I send a telegram here, too?
That'll be two annas a word.

*taar.*
*kiaa mãĩ iahãã taar bhii bheej saktaa hũũ?*
*eek lafz-kee doo aanee lagẽẽ-gee.*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. OBLIQUE SINGULAR IN EXPRESSIONS FOR MEASURES

1. *das minaT* 'ten minutes'
   *doo aanee* 'two annas'
   *čhai inč* 'six inches'
2. *tiin dafaa* 'three times'
   *aRhaaii čhaTããk* 'two chatanks and a half'
3. *aaTh seer-see* 'than eight ser'
   *pandra baras-kii hai* 'she is fifteen years old'
   *doo haftee-kee baad* 'after two weeks'

These examples show nouns preceded by numbers. The nouns indicate weights (such as *seer*, *čhaTããk*), measures (*inč*), or units of money (*aanee*) or time (*haftee*, *baras*, *dafaa*). Such nouns often behave in a peculiar way if preceded by numbers (other than "one" or "half"). They take the SINGULAR OBLIQUE form. In other words, these particular nouns will not ordinarily be found with the plural endings *-õõ* or *-ẽẽ* if preceded by numbers.

The examples under (1) are masculine nouns (there the oblique singular happens not to be different from the plural); those under (2), feminine nouns (no ending *-ẽẽ*!); under (3) nouns followed by particles (no ending *-õõ-*!).

Such adjectives as *sab* 'all', *bahot* 'many', *thooRee* (*thooRii*) 'few' have the same effect on following nouns as have numbers:

*bahot dafaa* 'many times'
*sab mahiinee* 'all the months'
*thooRii čhaTããk-kaa uazan* 'a weight of few chatanks'

With this, contrast the normal treatment of ordinary nouns: *doo beeTiiãã* 'two daughters'; *bahot jaghõõ-mẽẽ* 'in many places'. Occasionally, however, one hears *doo beeTii*, *bahot jagaa*.



Digitized by Google

When such a number-plus-noun phrase is the subject of a sentence, the verb is in the plural form:

*das minaT lagtee hãĩ* 'it takes ten minutes'
*doo rupaee lagee* 'it took two rupees'

Note: Compare:
*tiin aanee-mẽẽ* 'in three annas'
*tiin aanõõ-mẽẽ* 'in three anna-coins'

## B. COMMAND FORMS

*un-koo kahᵉnaa kee mujhee bulaaẽẽ* 'tell him to call me'
*meeraa sandeesaa deenaa mat-bhuulnaa* 'don't forget to give (him) my message!'

Commands, as you know, may be given in three degrees of politeness: *mat-bhuul* (rude), *mat-bhuuloo* (ordinary), *mat-bhuuliiee* (polite) 'don't forget!'. Furthermore, the subjunctive (plural form, referring to *aap* 'you') is often used as a courteous suggestion or extremely polite command: (*aap*) *andar aaẽẽ?* 'Suppose you come in; won't you come in; please come in'; (*aap*) *xatam karẽẽ janaab* 'Do you mind finishing it, sir?'. (Frequently, as indicated by the question mark after *aaẽẽ*, these phrases are spoken with rising voice, as in a yes-or-no question).

At the head of this *Comment* you find a fifth construction used in telling a person what he or she should (or should not) do. It consists simply of the infinitive in *-naa*. It is most often found when the command refers to the future rather than to the immediate situation in which it is given; *un-koo kahoo* 'tell them (now or any time)': *un-koo kahᵉnaa* 'tell them (tomorrow night; when they come home, etc.)'. It is not restricted to any particular level of politeness.



Digitized by Google

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Make up plausible answers to these questions:

1. *meeree ghar aanee-kee pahᵉlee* TAILIFUUN *kitnii dafaa bajaa.*
2. *aap-nee kis nambar-koo bulaaiaa.*
3. THIIK *nambar kaisee milee-gaa.*
4. *us-kee daftar-mẽẽ kitnee* TAILIFUUN *hãĩ.*
5. *agar ġalat nambar milee too kiaa karũũ.*
6. *jab meeree uaalid uaapas aaẽẽ, too aap-koo kis nambar-par bulaaẽẽ.*
7. *kiaa mãĩ kisii uaḳt phir bulaaũũ, iaa un-kee bulaanee-kaa inteezaar karũũ?*
8. *kiaa tum sandeesaa deenaa bhuul na-gaee?*
9. *kiaa taar bheejnee-see* TAILIFUUN-*mẽẽ baatčiit karnaa mãhᵉgaa hai?*
10. *taar bheejnee-kee liiee kahãã jaaũũ.*
11. "urgent" *taar bheejnee-mẽẽ faaedaa kiaa hai.*
12. *bairang* ČITTHII-*kaa paisaa kaun dee-gaa.*
13. *joo xat sipaahii loog bheejtee hãĩ, kiaa un-kee liiee kooii* TIKIT *čaahiiee?*
14. *amriikaa aur inglistaan-kee darmiiaan hauaaii* DAAK *kab-see hai.*
15. *iee* BANDAL *kitnii čha*TĀĀK*-kaa hai.*
16. *uazan-kaa ḳaanuun kiaa hai.*
17. *maamulii aur xaas* ČITTHII*-mẽẽ faraḳ kiaa hai.*
18. *jitnee xat likhee kiaa un-see ziaadaa milee?*
19. *kiaa* ČITTHIIÕÕ*-see čhapee huuee kaagazõõ-kaa ziaadaa mahᵉsuul deenaa čaahiiee?*
20. *hauaaii* DAAK*-kee liiee, eek* BANDAL*-kii lambaaii* ČAURAAII *kitnii hoonaa čaahiiee.*
21. *tum kaisee jaantee hoo, kee iee xat kaafii halkaa hai iaa ziadaa bhaarii?*

2. Say in Hindustani:

1. Don't hang it up.
2. Wait at the postoffice.
3. It costs more than 5 annas.
4. You need a one-rupee stamp.
5. His two years' salary is 3000 rupees.
6. They have been hungry for five days.
7. How many chatanks does it weigh?
8. It is less than five miles long.

3. Which would you say if

1. the party on the telephone is talking too loud:
   a. TĀĀG *diijiiee aur phir bulaaiiee janaab.*
   b. *dhiiree dhiiree booliiee janaab.*
   c. *zoor-see mat-booliiee janaab.*



Digitized by Google

2. you want to know if the party on the telephone wishes to leave a message:

a. *kiaa aap phir bulaaẽẽ-gee janaab?*
b. *kiaa kuch sandeesaa čhoorẽẽ-gee janaab?*
c. *kiaa eek sandeesaa čhooRūū janaab?*

3. you want to say: "it is seven minutes to nine":

a. *das bajnee-mẽẽ saat minaT hāī.*
b. *nau bajnee-mee saat minaT hāī.*
c. *nau baj-kar saaTh minat hāī.*

4. you want to find out which day of the month it is:

a. *eek mahiinee-mẽẽ kitnee din hāī.*
b. *aaj kaun-saa din hai.*
c. *aaj kaun-sii taariix hai.*

5. you have forgotten the address of your friend's boss:

a. *māī tumhaaree maalik-kaa pataa bhuul gaiaa.*
b. *māī tumhaaree maalik-kee patee-koo bulaataa thaa.*
c. *tumhaaree maalik-kii paTTiiāā khoo gaīī.*

6. you ask which is more expensive: to send your package by freight or parcel post:

a. *iee banDal maalgaaRii-see bheejnaa Daak-see māh$^{e}$gaa hai?*
b. *kiaa iee ciTThiiāā xaas Daak-see bheej dūū iaa hauaaii Daak-see?*
c. *kiaa iee banDal Daak-see bheejnee-kee liiee ziaadaa bhaarii hoo-gaa?*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Das and his servant.

Das: *māī-nee sunaa kee Tailifuun-kii ghanTii baj rahii hai.*

*kiaa tum-koo maaluum hai kee kis-nee bulaaiaa.*

*Husein: ham loogõõ-koo kisii-nee nahīī bulaaiaa; janaab.*

*leekin ḳariib ḳariib tiin baj-kar pačiis minaT-mẽẽ kisii aur-see Tailifuun-par baatčiit kii.*

*unhõõ-nee apnaa naam nahīī bataaiaa, janaab.*

*māī-nee un-see puuchaa. leekin unhõõ-nee Tailifuun tāāg diiaa.*

*šaaed phir bulaaẽẽ; janaab.*

Das: *apnee uaalid saaheb-koo Tailifuun-see kiõõ nahīī bulaanee-kii koošiš kii.*



Digitized by Google

Ram Lal: *janaab mãĩ-nee too tiin čaar dafaa kooširš kii. maaluum hootaa hai, kee ghar-see gaee hãĩ.*

Das: *lain too masruuf na-thii?*

Ram Lal: *jii nahĩĩ. jab kabhii bulaaiaa, too ghanTii bajii, leekin kisii-nee jauaab na-diiaa.*

Das: *phir kooširš karnaa.*
*ai husain; jin apnee doost-koo mãĩ kal girjee-mẽẽ milaa, un-koo Tailifuun-see bulaa-kar puučhoo kee un-kii tabiiat kaisii hai.*

Husein: *mãĩ-nee bulaaiaa janaab.*

Das: *too unhõõ-nee kiaa kahaa.*

Husein: *mãĩ too samajh nahĩĩ sakaa janaab.*
*jin-see mãĩ boolaa unhõõ-nee saaf aur aahestaa baat na-kii.*

Das: *kiaa tum-nee sandeesaa čhooR diiaa?*

Husein: *jii hãã. uoo too zaruur iaad rakhaa janaab;*
*aap-kee naam-kii hijjee bhii kii.*

2. At the postoffice.

Mrs. Potter: *kiaa tum Daakuaalee hoo.*

Aziz: *jii hãã. mãĩ TikiT lifaafee aur kaagaz beečneeuaalaa hũũ. leekin agar aap-koo kučh aur čaahiiee, too baRee Daakxaanee jaaiiee jabaab.*

Mrs. Potter: *mujhee eek sau aRhaaii aaneeuaalee TikiT čaahiiee, aur das hauaaii. Daak-kee lifaafee.*

Aziz: *kiaa čaah$^{e}$tii hãĩ, kee xat-kaa uazan karũũ?*

Mrs. Potter: *meherbaanii. us-kii too zaruurat nahĩĩ kiõõ-kee halkaa hai.*
*ziaadaa mah$^{e}$sụul nahĩĩ čaahiiee.*

Mrs. Potter: *iee banDal Daak-see amriikaa-koo bheejnaa čaah$^{e}$tii hũũ.*

Aziz: *is-mẽẽ kiaa hai. likhee huuee kaagaz iaa paisaa too nahĩĩ?*

Mrs. Potter: *is-mẽẽ sirf čaar tasuiirẽẽ hãĩ.*

Aziz: *us-kaa uazan kiaa hai.*
*aap jaantee hãĩ, kee doo seer-see ziaadaa Thiik nahĩĩ.*
*lambaaii čauRaaii bhii Thiik nahĩĩ.*
*duusree bakas-mẽẽ rakhnaa paRee-gaa.*

Mrs. Potter: *lambaaii čauRaaii-kaa ḳaanuun kiaa hai.*

Aziz: *maamulii banDal-kii lambaaii das inč aur čauRaaii čhai inč-see kam hoonaa čaahiiee.*
*nahĩĩ too maalgaaRii-see bheej diijiiee.*



Digitized by Google

3. Homework.

*Teacher: tum loog aadhee ghanTee-kee liiee aahestaa aahestaa niičee jaa-kar uarziš karoo, aur jab aRhaaii bajee-kii ghanTii bajee too uaapas aaoo.*

*mãĩ tum-koo kuch ghar-kaa kaam dũũ-gaa.*

*aččhii ḳalam aur siaahii-see, apnii uaaldaa-koo bahot saaf saaf eek bairang čiTThii likhoo.*

*iaad rakhoo kee hijjee ġalat na-hoo.*

*halkaa kaaġaz istemaal karoo. uarnaa lifaafee-kaa uazan bhaarii hoonee-see ziaadaa mahᵉsuul lagee-gaa, us-mẽẽ likhoo, kee aaj-kal mãĩ paRhnee likhnee-mẽẽ bahot masruuf hũũ, leekin duusrii taariix-see eek haftee-kii čhuTTii milee-gii.*

*lambaaii čauRaaii ziaadaa aur uazan bhaarii hoonee-kii uajaa-see kaṗRõõ-kaa banDal Daak-see nàhĩĩ bheej saktaa.*

*balkee maalgaaRii-see bheejnaa paRee-gaa.*

*meerii čiTThii milnee-par Tailiifuun-see raat-mẽẽ bulaanaa.*

*kiõõ-kee us uaḳt lain xaalii hai aur mãĩ bhii masruuf nahĩĩ.*

*taar-mẽẽ sandeesaa bheejnee-see mujh-koo Tailiifuun-mẽẽ baat karnaa ziaadaa pasand hai.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. Your friend Das calls up to say that he has just received a letter from his daughter in America. He's very worried because she writes that she has joined the WACs. You try to explain to him who the WACs are, what they do, and that he doesn't have to worry about his daughter.

   b. You are rehearsing for a radio performance. There will be an announcer, a commercial, and a short dialogue on India by two members of the class. A director makes you go through your paces, times you, tells you to speak louder, more slowly, etc.

   c. You lodge a complaint with telephone company, concerning matters of service.

2. Make up questions and answers on the *Listening In.*



Digitized by Google

*a*

*aadhaa* half
*aahestaa* slowly
*aRhaaii* two and a half

*b*

*bajnaa* (N) to ring, to sound
*banDal* package
*bairang* collect
*bhaarii* heavy
*bhuulnaa* (N) to forget

*č*

*čauRaa* wide
*čauRaaii* (*-ii*) width
*čhapnaa* (N) to be printed
*čhaTāāk* (*-ii*) a chatank, about two ounces
*čiTThii* (*-ii*) letter

*D*

*Daak* (*-ii*) mail
*Daakxaanaa* postoffice

*ġ*

*ġalat* wrong

*h*

*hijjee* (*-ii*) spelling
*halkaa* light

*i*

*iaad rakhnaa* (T) to keep in mind

*k*

*kidhar* whither, where to

*ķ*

*ķalam* (masc. or *-ii*) pen
*ķiimtii* valuable, precious

*l*

*lain* (*-ii*) line
*lambaa* long
*lambaaii* (*-ii*) length
*lifaafaa* envelope

*m*

*maal* property
*maalgaaRii* (*-ii*) freight train
*mahᵉsuul* tax
*masruuf* busy



Digitized by Google

*s*

*sandeesaa* message

*seer* (16 chatanks,) about two pounds

*siaahii* (*-ii*) ink

*t*

*taar* wire, telegram

*T*

*ṭããgnaa* (*T*) to hang up

*u*

*uazan* weight

*x*

*xaalii* empty, free



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 26

## AFTER THE BATTLE

### SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| attack | *hamlaa.* |
| This morning the enemy attacked (us). | *aaj subaa-koo dušman-nee ham-par hamlaa kiiaa.* |
| although | *haalãã-kee,* |
| to stop something | *rooknaa,* |
| damage | *nuḳsaan.* |
| Although we stopped 'em they still did plenty of damage. | *haalãã-kee ham-nee hamlaa rookaa, us-par bhii unhõõ-nee bahot nuḳsaan diiaa.* |
| We had to take a lot of soldiers to the hospital. | *bahot sipaahii loogõõ-koo aspataal lee jaanaa paRaa.* |
| bullet | *goolii,* |
| hits | *lagtaa hai,* |
| arm | *bããh,* |
| wounded | *zaxmii.* |
| This man got a bullet in the arm. | *goolii lagnee-see iee aadmii bããh-mẽẽ zaxmii huuaa.* |
| bone | *haDDii,* |
| muscle | *rag.* |
| The bone was broken and the muscle was torn. | *haDDii TuuT gaii aur rag phaT gaii.* |



Digitized by Google

The doctor bandaged him up and gave him [some] sleeping pills.

*ḍaakṭar-nee paṭṭii bããdhii, aur soo jaanee-kii gooliiãã dii.*

face

*čehᵉraa.*

The man next to him was hit in the face.

*us-kee baazuu-uaalaa aadmii čehᵉree-par zaxmii huuaa.*

eye
blind

*ããkh,*
*andhaa.*

He got it in the eyes and might go blind.

*ããkh-mẽẽ čooṭ lagii, aur andhaa hoonee-kaa xatraa hai.*

entire
body
skin

*saaraa,*
*badan,*
*jild.*

The skin all over his body was burned.

*us-kee saaree badan-kii jild jal gaii.*

cheerful

*xušmizaaj.*

Even though he can't see, he not only doesn't complain but he's very cheerful.

*na-deekh saknee-par bhii, kuch šikaaet nahii kartaa, balkee bahot xušmizaaj hai.*

His friend wasn't seriously wounded.

*us-kaa doost bahot zaxmii nahii huuaa.*

trench
ankle
sprain
spectacles

*xandaq,*
*taxnaa,*
*mooč,*
*ainak.*

He fell into a trench, sprained his ankle and broke his glasses.

*xandaq-mẽẽ girnee-see us-kee taxnee-mẽẽ mooč aaii, aur us-kii ainak ṭuuṭ gaii.*

A bullet hit him on [the side of] his head.

*goolii us-kee sir-par lagii.*

ear

*kaan.*

His ear was hurt.

*kaan-mẽẽ čooṭ aaii.*



Digitized by Google

nose — *naak,*
mouth — *mũũ,*
blood — *xuun,*
to come out — *nikalnaa.*
He bleeds from his nose and mouth. — *naak aur mũũ-see xuun nikaltaa hai.*

He can't hear. — *uoo sun nahĩĩ saktaa.*

deaf — *bahᵉraa.*
He's afraid of getting deaf. — *us-koo bahᵉree hoonee-kaa Dar hai.*

The doctor'll surely fix him up. — *DaakTar us-koo zaruur Thiik kar dee-gaa.*

wound — *zaxam.*
That man's wounds are very serious. — *us aadmii-kee zaxam bahot saxt hãĩ.*

lungs — *pheepRaa,*
to tear something — *phaaRnaa.*
A bullet tore his lung. — *goolii-nee pheepRaa phaaR Daalaa.*

He lost a lot of blood. — *us-see bahot xuun gaiaa.*

breath — *sããs.*
[Now] he can't breathe very well. — *aччhii taraa sããs nahĩĩ lee saktaa.*

tooth — *dããt.*
That man broke a tooth. — *us-kaa dããt TuuT gaiaa.*

He said his whole body hurts. — *kahaa kee saaree badan-mẽẽ takliif hai.*

circle — *čakkar,*
standing — *khaRaa.*
"I'm dizzy and can't stand up." — *mujhee čakkar aatee hãĩ aur khaRaa nahĩĩ hoo saktaa.*



Digitized by Google

brain
The people who have brain injuries are in a special part of the building.

morgue
The dead are in the morgue.

to be buried
They will be buried tomorrow.

cemetery
The cemetery is not far from here.

to save
old
to drown (= be drowned)
was saved when already going under
A soldier fell into the water, and, when he tried to save him this old man almost drowned himself.

He wasn't able to save the soldier.

deep
to swim
The river's very deep and it's dangerous to go swimming.

neighborhood
flower
The women of the neighborhood send the soldiers (many) presents to cheer them up, such as candy, flowers, etc.

to laugh
They know that fun's the best cure.

*dimaaġ.*
*dimaaġ-mẽẽ čooTuaalee loog imaarat-mẽẽ eek xaas taraf hãĩ.*

*murdaa xaanaa.*
*maree huuee loog murdee xaanee-mẽẽ hãĩ.*

*dafan hoonaa.*
*kal dafan hõõ-gee.*

*ḳabrustaan.*
*ḳabrustaan iahãã-see duur nahĩĩ.*

*bačaanaa,*
*buuRhaa,*
*Duubnaa,*
*Duubtee Duubtee bačaa.*
*eek sipaahii paanii-mẽẽ giraa, aur us-koo bačaanee-mẽẽ ie*
*buuRhaa aadmii xud Duubtee Duubtee bačaa.*
*sipaahii-koo bačaanee-mẽẽ kaamiaab na-huuaa.*

*gahᵉraa,*
*tairnaa.*
*nadii bahot gahᵉrii hai aur tairnee-mẽẽ xatraa hai.*

*mohallaa,*
*phuul.*
*mohallee-kii aurat loog, sipaahiiõõ-koo xuš karnee-kee liiee,*
*bahot ḳisim-kee tohᵉfee bheejtẽẽ hãĩ, jaisee miTHaaii*
*phuul uaġairaa.*

*hãsnaa.*
*uoo jaantii hãĩ kee hãsnaa dauaaii-see aččhii dauaaii hai.*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. COMBINATION OF NOUNS

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. a. | *ham loog* | 'we' |
| | *kiisaan loog* | 'peasants' |
| | *taalib-ilm loog* | 'students' |
| | *aurat loog* | 'women' |
| b. | *daarooɣaa saaheb* | 'Mr. inspector' |
| 2. | *ʈikit baabuu* | 'ticket clerk' |
| | *reel gaaʀii* | 'railroad' |
| 3. | *muurdee xaanee-mẽẽ* | 'in the morgue' |
| | *georkhee loogõõ-kaa . . .* | 'the Gurkhas' . . .' |
| | *raajaa aur nauaab loogõõ-kaa* | 'of the Hindu and Moslem princes' |

1.a. Plural nouns and pronouns denoting a plurality of living beings are often followed by *loog* 'people': *aap loog* 'you' (here and after *ham*—which is also used for 'I'—*loog* stresses the fact that more than one person is involved); *bandar loog* 'monkeys,' *beeʈee loog* '(your) sons.'

b. In a similar fashion, a few such words as *saaheb* 'gentleman, Mr.' may follow nouns denoting titles, family relationships, etc.: *uaalid saaheb, afsar saaheb*. (Note that persons are often referred to simply by their names: *daas* 'MR. Das,' *jauaaher laal nahᵉruu* 'MR. J. Nehru').

2. Otherwise nouns are rarely just stuck together without anything in between. This happens only in a limited number of set expressions such as *ʈikit baabuu* 'ticket clerk,' *reel gaaʀii* 'railway train,' *murdaa xaanaa* 'house for the dead, morgue,' and others with . . . *baabuu*, . . . *gaaʀii*, and . . . *xaanaa*. Note, however, that these are ex-



Digitized by Google

ceptional cases. The normal equivalents of English so-called 'compound words' are *-kaa* (*-kee*, *-kii*): *laʀaaii-kaa jahaaz* 'warship,' *seeb-kee daraxt* 'apple trees.'

3. A noun preceding another noun according to (1) or (2) of this *Comment* is treated like an adjective. It does not have the endings *-ẽẽ*, *-õõ*, except that a masculine noun ending in a changing *-aa* changes *-aa* into *-ee* in the oblique singular, and in the entire plural:

*raajaaõõ-koo*, *nauaabõõ-koo* 'to the princes' but:
*raajaa aur nauaab loogõõ-koo*

*goorkhõõ-see* 'with the Gurkhas' but:
*gorkhee loogõõ-see*

*murdõõ-kaa* 'of corpses'
*murdee xaanõõ-kaa* 'of the morgues'

It is easy to see that the expressions:

*aччhee loog* 'good people'
*aччhee loogĩõ-koo* 'to good people' are entirely parallel with:

*goorkhee loog* 'Gurkhas'
*goorkhee loogõõ-koo* 'to the Gurkhas'

Note: Since the word *xàanaa* 'abode, dwelling' occurs by itself, the phrase *andhaa xaanaa* may mean: 'a "blind" (= untidy) house,' or 'a home for the blind.'

4. Note such expressions as *eek jooʀaa juutaa* 'one pair (of) shoes,' *doo gilaas ƥaanii* 'two glasses (of) water,' *eek darjan anᴅee* 'one dozen eggs.'



Digitized by Google

## B. VERB SETS

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. | *mar(naa)* | 'to die, be killed' | *maar(naa)* | 'to beat' |
| | *nikal-* | 'to go out' | *nikaal-* | 'to make go out' |
| | *dikh-* | 'to be visible, appear' | *deekh-* | 'to see' |
| | *ruk-* | 'to be stopped' | *rook-* | 'to stop something' |

The four verb stems in the left hand column have two things in common: they have a short vowel (*a*, *i*, *u*) before the last consonant and they are neuter. Those in the right hand column have a long vowel (*aa*, *ee*, *oo*) instead of the short one, and they are all transitive. If the meaning of the short vowel verb is "to become", that of the corresponding long vowel verb is 'to cause someone or something to become x, to make x' although the idiomatic equivalents in English are much shorter. Note that the short vowel neuters and the long vowel transitives are in much the same relationship to each other as is the neuter *hoonaa* to the transitive *karnaa*.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2. | *bik-* | 'to be sold' | *beeč-* | 'to sell' |
| | *čhuuT-* | 'to go off' | *čhooR-* | 'to leave behind' |
| | *phaT-* | 'to get torn' | *phaaR-* | 'to tear something' |
| | *TuuT-* | 'to get broken' | *tooR-* | 'to break something' |

These pairs show irregular sound changes, but they are not different in character from the ones discussed above.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3. | *baj-* | 'to be struck' | *bajaa-* | 'to strike something' |
| | *ban-* | 'to be made' | *banaa-* | 'to make' |
| | *bool-* | 'to speak' | *bulaa-* | 'to call' |
| | *čal-* | 'to go, walk' | *čalaa-* | 'to drive, make go, shoot' |
| | *deekh-* | 'to see' | *dikhaa-* | 'to show' |
| | *gir-* | 'to fall' | *giraa-* | 'to drop something' |



Digitized by Google

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *kar-* | 'to do' | *karaa-* | 'to get something done' |
| *paRh-* | 'to read, study' | *paRhaa-* | 'to teach' |
| *sun-* | 'to hear' | *sunaa-* | 'to tell' |
| *tooR-* | 'to break something' | *tuRaa-* | 'to get something broken' |

These sets have a one-syllable stem in the left hand column, and the same stem lengthened by *-aa* in the right hand column. If the one-syllable stem has a long vowel, the two-syllable stem has a short one instead: *deekh-: dikhaa-; tooR-: tuRaa-*. The one-syllable stem is neuter (*ban*)- or transitive (*kar-*); the two-syllable stem in *-aa-* is always transitive. The relationship in meaning is about the same as the one observed in the preceding sets. The longer verbs mean: "to cause to perform the action of the shorter verb".

Note the particular meaning of the stems *tuRaa-* 'to have something broken', and *karaa-* 'to have something done'; their direct object is always a THING (*paisaa tuRaaiiee; baal kaTaaiiee*). If you want to name the person by whom the agent has the action performed, it is referred to by *-see: us-nee iee nooT mujh-see tuRaaiaa* 'he had the bill changed THROUGH me, he had me change the bill'.

Note that in those cases where the left-hand verb is transitive, it may, in turn, be the long-vowel extension of an even shorter verb (see under 1 and 2). Thus, we have *dikh-* 'to appear': *deekh-* 'to see': *dikhaa-* 'to show'; *TuuT-* 'to be broken': *tooR-* 'to break something': *tuRaa-* 'to have something broken'.

4. In *ban-* 'to be made, become': *banaa-* 'to make': *banuaa-* 'to have made' we have an example of further extension of an *-aa-* transitive by insertion of *-u-*. The relationship in MEANING is again the same as between *kar-* and *karaa-*, or *tooR-* and *tuRaa-*, but the forms have gone one step further, as it were. Here is a synopsis of these sets, according to their FORM and to whether they are neuter or transitive:

| short | short | long | *-aa-* | *-uaa-* |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| N | T | T | T | T |
| *dikh-* | | *deekh-* | *dikhaa-* | |
| | *kar-* | | *karaa-* | |
| *ban-* | | | *banaa-* | *banuaa-* |



Digitized by Google

5. Note that the past tense of a neuter short verb and the past tense of the corresponding longer verb are necessarily very close in meaning. *dikhnaa*, for instance, is 'to be visible': *dikhtee hãĩ* 'they can be seen, are seen', *dikhee* 'they could be seen, were seen'. *deekhnaa*, on the other hand means 'to see': *deekhtee hãĩ* 'they see'. Since it is transitive, its past tense comes very close to *dikhee* as far as meaning goes: *deekhee* 'somebody saw them (of things, not persons)'. The difference is nevertheless real: in the last mentioned case you say something about the person who did the "looking", even if he is not mentioned specifically by *us-nee*, *kisii-nee*, *loogõõ-nee*, while in the first instance, you simply state that the things in question were in sight or COULD be seen. Similarly, *ghar na-bikaa* 'the house wasn't for sale' vs. *ghar na-beečaa* '(he, we, the owner . . .) didn't sell the house', where it would be easy to add *us-nee*, *ham-loogõõ-nee*, *maalik-nee*.

## C. MORE ABOUT PARTICLES

1. *na-deekh saknee-par bhii* 'although he can't see . . .'

*-par bhii* after an infinitive means 'in spite of . . .', 'although.' The negation is *na-*. Other examples:

*deer-see aanee-par bhii kuch jagaa milii* 'although he (etc.) was late, he found a place'

*hamlaa rooknee-par bhii . . .* 'although we (etc.) halted the attack . . .'

2. A comparison between the last example and the *Basic Sentences* shows that an English clause beginning with "although" has two typical equivalents in Hindustani: an infinitive followed by *-par bhii* (*rooknee-par bhii*), and a clause beginning with *haalãã-kee* 'although' (*haalãã-kee hamlaa rookaa*). This is, of course, characteristic of a great many similar expressions: compare *jab paanii gir rahaa* and *paanii girnee-mẽẽ* 'while, when it was raining,' etc. Often the infinitive construction is the only standard equivalent of a more lengthy English expression: *nahaanee -kee pahᵉlee . . .* 'before you eat'; *laRaaii jiitnee-kee baad* 'after they had won the war'; *laRaaii jiitnee-tak* 'until they had won the war.' Note that *deekhnee-par* (without *bhii*!) means 'immediately upon seeing, right after I saw.'

3. *raat-see iahãã hai* 'he's been one night; he's been here since last night'



Digitized by Google

Indications of time are ordinarily given in the form of an oblique with or without *-mẽẽ* or *-koo* (see Unit 11, *Comment* E). These expressions may be said to answer the question "When?". However, in a sentence like "he's been here such-and-such a time" the question is "How long?" rather than "When?". Instead of "how long has he been . . ." Hindustani asks something like "(starting) FROM when IS he . . .": *kab-see hai*. The answer is, in this case, *raat-see* '(starting from, or since) one night'.

The question "How long?", however, does not always involve the starting point of something that HAS (or HAD) been going on. If you say "how long are you going to stay," or "how long did you stay (rather than: had you been staying)" you are actually talking about the end rather than the beginning of a period of time. The proper Hindustani expression for this type of "How long?" statement is *-tak: eek mahiinee-tak rahaa* 'I stayed as long as one month, stayed one month' vs. *eek mahiinee-see rahaa* 'I had been staying one month, I had been there for a month (lit. I stayed there, starting one month [earlier])'.

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences:

1. The peasants ------.
   ------ *loogõõ-kee paas bahot jaanuar nahĩĩ.*
2. Your son ------.
   ------ *saaheb-nee iee xat bheejaa.*
3. ------ battle field?
   ------ *maidaan kahãã hai.*
4. The women ------.
   ------ *loog rooĩĩ.*
5. The soldiers ------.
   ------ *loogõõ-koo jaanaa paʀee-gaa.*
6. ------ a glass of ------.
   ------ *šaraab čaahᵉtaa hũũ.*

2. Say in Hindustani:

1. The corpses have been here a couple of days.
2. I had to stand for several hours.
3. They weren't able to rescue him although they tried for (some) hours.



Digitized by Google

4. A high (*baRaa*) officer is going to pay the wounded men a visit.
5. He's a cheerful fellow, although he never laughs.
6. The bullet hit his right arm, but it didn't break the bone.
7. His face was burned, but nothing happened to his eyes, thank God.
8. Even though they're blind, they can do useful (good) work.
9. I haven't been in this neighborhood more than a year.
10. Since when have you been deaf?
11. How long have you been staying here?
12. I won't be able to stay much longer, much as I'd like to.
13. He says he's been feeling dizzy all day.
14. The doctors will try to take the bullet out.
15. They say the bullet won't come out for some time.
16. There wasn't much damage from the attack, even though it made a great deal of noise.

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Das meets Ram, who has his hand in a cast.

Das: *tumhaaree haath-mee kiaa huuaa.*

Ram: *mãĩ-nee mooTargaaRii-see Takkar khaaii aur zaxmii huuaa.*
*šaaed meerii bããh TuuT gaaii.*

Das: *kiaa aap moTargaaRii-mẽẽ akeelee thee?*

Ram: *gaaRii duusraa aadmii čalaa rahaa thaa.*
*mãĩ aur meerii biiuii doonõõ sirf baiThee huuee thee.*

Das: *kiaa un loogõõ-kii bhii haalat xaraab hai?*

Ram: *gaaRii čalaaneeuaalee-koo kuč̌h čooT nahĩĩ aaii.*
*sirf us-kii ainak TuuT gaaii.*
*leekin meerii biiuii-kee čeh$^{e}$ree-par zaxam huuaa.*
*aur un-kee dããt TuuT gaaee.*

Das: *ããkh-mẽẽ too čooT nahĩĩ hai?*

Ram: *xudaa-kii meherbaanii.*
*leekin šaaed kaan-mẽẽ čooT lagii hai.*
*kiõõ-kee bahot xuun niklaa.*



Digitized by Google

*bah$^{e}$rii hoonee-kaa Dar hai.*

*DaakTar-nee paTTii bāādhii aur soo jaanee-kii dauaaii dii.*

Das: *aap-kii tabiiat kaisii hai.*

Ram: *aččhii nahīī.*

*ungliiāā*[1] *nahīī čalaa saktaa.*

*meeraa saaraa badan dard kartaa hai.*

*bahot kamzoor hūū. muškil-see khaRaa hoo saktaa hūū.*

*mujhee čakkar aatee hāī.*

*aur andheeraa maaluum hootaa hai.*

## 2. The man who found the rupee.

*eek ġariib aadmii dil-mēē kah$^{e}$taa thaa, kee agar xudaa kahīī-see eek rupiaa dee.*

*too māī doo aanee us-kee naam-par xarč karūū-gaa.*

*aisaa huuaa kee us-koo eek rupaiaa saRak-par paRaa milaa.*

*dil-mēē bahot xuš huuaa, aur miThaaii xariidnee-kee liiee dukaan-koo gaiaa.*

*dukaanuaalee-nee rupaee-koo bajaa-kar kahaa, kee iee rupaiaa aččhaa nahīī.*

*is-kee soolaa aanee nahīī dee saktaa hūū, balkee čaudaa aanee dūū-gaa.*

*us-nee čaudaa aanee lee-kar phir eek paisaa bhii xudaa-kee naam-par xarč na-kiiaa.*

*aur kah$^{e}$nee lagaa, kee meeree ġariib hoonee-kii uajaa-see, xudaa-nee xud uupar-see apnee doo aanee lee liiee, aur meeraa etkaad na-kiiaa.*

## 3. Mr. Aziz comes back from America.

Ram Lal: *maholle-kee sab jauaan loog too laRaaii-par hāī.*

*aur māī buuRhaa akeelaa thaa.*

*mujh-koo xušii hai, kee aap uaapas aa gaee.*

*amriikaa-kii xabar sunaaiiee.*

Aziz: *uoo mulk bahot ThanDaa hai.*

*mujh-koo čeh$^{e}$ree aur badan-mēē bahot ThanDii maaluum hootii thii.*

Ram Lal: *kiaa safar-mēē dušman-kee hamlee-see jahaaz DuubnEE-kaa Dar thaa?*

Aziz: *laRaaii-kee šuruu-mēē jahaazōō-kaa bahot nuksaan huuaa, leekin ab duniiāā-kee sab gah$^{e}$ree samandarōō-mēē amriikan jahaaz safar kartee hāī.*

Ram Lal: *aap-kee čeh$^{e}$ree-kii jild bahot saaf hai, aur siidhee khaRee hoo saktee hāī.*

[1] 'fingers'.



Digitized by Google

*maī-nee sunaa, kee aap biimaar thee.*

*maaluum hootaa hai, kee amriikan* DAAKTAR *bahot hušiaar hāī.*

*meeraa xiaal hai, kee unhõõ-nee marnee-see bačaaiaa.*

Aziz: *haalãã-kee māī buuRhaa aadmii hũũ, leekin mujh-koo ab čakkar nahīī aatee, dimaaġ kamzoor nahīī, ããkh-kee liiee ainak banaaii, badan aur haDDiiõõ-mẽẽ dard-kee liiee gooliiãã dīī, dããt Thiik kiiee.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. You are in charge of a first-aid station near the battlefield. You examine every wounded man brought in, ask him a few questions, and give instructions to your assistant about the necessary treatment.
   b. A doctor gives you a physical exam. You answer his questions and tell your story.
   c. You apply for a job with a travel bureau. Your prospective boss questions you about your qualifications. Since you are to take care of all travels in India, he will inquire about your familiarity with the language, the region, customs, etc. You will then tell him about some specific tours you are planning after the war.

2. Read through the *Listening-In*, and (a) make up questions and answers; (b) re-tell the anecdote (*Listening-In*, 2) as if you were the man who found the money.

### FINDER LIST

*a*

| | |
|---|---|
| *ããkh (-ii)* | the eye |
| *ainak (-ii)* | glasses, spectacles |
| *andhaa* | blind |

*b*

| | |
|---|---|
| *bāāh (-ii)* | arm |
| *bačaanaa* (T) | to save, rescue |
| *badan* | body |
| *bahᵉraa* | deaf |
| *buuRhaa* | old (of people) |

*č*

| | |
|---|---|
| *čehᵉraa* | face |
| *čakkar* | circle |



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| *d* | |
| *dããt* | tooth |
| *dafan hoonaa* (N) | to be buried |
| *dafan karnaa* (T) | to bury |
| *dimaaġ* | brain |
| *D* | |
| *Duubnaa* (N) | to drown, sink |
| *g* | |
| *gah$^{e}$raa* | deep |
| *goolii* (*-ii*) | ball, bullet, pill |
| *h* | |
| *haalãã-kee* | although |
| *haDDii* (*-ii*) | bone |
| *hamlaa* | attack |
| *hãsnaa* (N) | to laugh |
| *j* | |
| *jild* (*-ii*) | skin |
| *k* | |
| *kaan* | ear |
| *kaamiaab* | successful, succeeding |
| *khaRaa* | standing, upright |
| *ḳ* | |
| *ḳabrustaan* | cemetery |
| *m* | |
| *mohallaa* | neighborhood |
| *mooč* (*-ii*) | sprain |
| *murdaa* | corpse |
| *murdaa xaanaa* | morgue |
| *mũũ* | mouth, face |
| *n* | |
| *naak* (*-ii*) | nose |
| *nikalnaa* (N) | to come out |
| *nuḳsaan* | damage, injury, harm |
| *p* | |
| *phaaRnaa* (T) | to tear something |
| *pheepRaa* | lungs |
| *phuul* | flower |
| *r* | |
| *rag* (*-ii*) | muscle |
| *rooknaa* (T) | to stop something |



Digitized by Google

*s*

| | |
|---|---|
| *saaraa* | whole |
| *sāās* | breath |

*t*

| | |
|---|---|
| *tairnaa* (N) | to swim |
| *taxnaa* | ankle |

*x*

| | |
|---|---|
| *xandaḳ* (*-ii*) | ditch, trench |
| *xušmizaaj* | cheerful |
| *xuun* | blood |

*z*

| | |
|---|---|
| *zaxam* | wound |
| *zaxmii* | wounded |



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 27

## BUILDING

### SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| Lt. Potter: | |
| carpenter | *baRhaii.* |
| Where can we find a carpenter? | *baRhaii kahãã milee-gaa.* |
| We want to have a building put up. | *haam loog eek imaarat banuaanaa čaah$^{e}$tee hãĩ.* |
| Do you have building materials? | *kiaa aap-kee paas imaarat-kaa saamaan hai?* |
| tools | *auzaar,* |
| rent | *kiraaiaa.* |
| Can you rent tools? | *kiaa auzaar kiraaee-mẽẽ milnaa mumkin hai?* |
| Aziz: | |
| axe | *kulhaaRii,* |
| saw | *aarii,* |
| hammer | *maartaul,* |
| nail | *kiil.* |
| I have axes, saws, hammers, and all the little things, such as nails, etc. | *meeree paas kulhaaRiiãã, aariiãã, maartaul, aur sab čhooTii čiizẽẽ, kiilẽẽ uaġairaa hãĩ.* |



Digitized by Google

wood
lime
mortar
There's wood, lime, and mortar, too

*lakRii,*
*čuunaa,*
*gaaraa.*
*aur lakRii, čuunaa, aur gaaraa bhii hai.*

to use something
You can't use wood.

*istemaal karnaa.*
*lakRii istemaal nahĩĩ kar saktee.*

wet
It'll rot because of the dampness.

*giilaa*
*giilii hoonee-see xaraab hoo jaaee-gii.*

metal
rust
Metal rusts.

*dhaat,*
*zang.*
*dhaat-mẽẽ zang jaataa hai.*

stone
at hand
Everything we need to build a house is on hand.

*patthar*
*maujuud.*
*patthar-kee alaauaa, ghar banaanee-kii sab čiizẽẽ maujuud hãĩ.*

It's difficult to get stones here in the low-lands.

*is maidaan-mẽẽ pattharõõ-kaa milnaa bahot muškil hai.*

brick
But you can get bricks.

*ĩĩT.*
*leekin ĩĩTẽẽ mil saktii hãĩ.*

What kind of a building do you want put up?

*kis kisim-kii imaarat banuaanaa čaahᵉtee hãĩ?*

Lt. Potter:

storehouse
watchman
We need a storehouse, and if there's a small room in it for the watchman to live in, that'll be fine.

*gudaam,*
*darbaan.*
*ham-koo gudaam-kii zaruurat hai, jis-kee saath eek čhooTaa kamraa darbaan-kee rahᵉnee-kee liiee hoo, too Thiik hai.*



Digitized by Google

a measure, about one yard
one foot
It should be about 45 yards long, 26 yards wide, and at least 6½ feet high.

*gaz,*
*fuT.*
*ṭaḳriiban pāītaalis gaz lambaa, čhabbis gaz čauRaa, kam-see kam saaRhee čhai fuT ĩũčaa hoonaa čaahiiee.*

a well
to dig
I think we'll have to dig a well, too.

*kuuãã,*
*khoodnaa.*
*meeraa xiaal hai kee kuuãã bhii khoodnaa hoo-gaa.*

idle
Let's not waste time.

*fuzuul.*
*fuzuul baat na-karẽẽ.*

Aziz:

Let's go out and look at the place.

*baahar jaa-kar jagaa deekhẽẽ.*

Lt. Potter:

map
I can't go with you, but I'll show you the place on a map.

*naḳšaa.*
*mãĩ aap-kee saath nahĩĩ jaa saaktaa, balkee naḳšee-mẽ aap-koo jagaa dikhaaũũ-gaa.*

It's right by the side of the road.

*saRak-kee baazuu-hii-par hai.*

dry
And the spot is good; it's dry and hard.

*suukhaa.*
*aur jagaa bahot ačchii hai. suukhii aur saxt hai.*

strong
It'll be a very solid building.

*mazbuut.*
*imaarat bahot mazbuut hoo-gii.*

safe
storm
It's a very safe place and there's no danger from storms because of the mountains.

*mahᵉfuuz,*
*ããdhii.*
*iee bahot mahᵉfuuz jagaa hai, aur pahaaR-kii uajee-see ããdhii-kaa xatraa nahĩĩ.*



Digitized by Google

brook
to stream, flow
A stream runs behind the house.

*naalaa,*
*bahᵉnaa.*
*ghar-kee piičhee naalaa bahᵉtaa hai.*

to cross something
mile
current
bridge
To cross the stream you have to go about one mile upstream, where there's a wooden bridge.

*paar karnaa,*
*miil,*
*dhaar,*
*pul.*
*naalee-koo paar karnee-kee liiee, taḳriiban eek miil dhaar-kee xilaaf jaanaa paʀee-gaa, jahãã lakʀii-kaa pul hai.*

lake
The stream empties into a lake.

*jhiil.*
*naalaa jhiil-mẽẽ girtaa hai.*

fish
net
There are many fish in the water and people catch them in (a) net[s].

*mačhlii,*
*jaal.*
*paanii-mẽẽ bahot mačhliiãã hãĩ, aur loog jaal-see pakaʀtee hãĩ.*

Please follow these directions carefully:

*jaisaa kahaa gaiaa hai, uaisaa hušiaarii-see kiijiiee.*

boundary
The workers should not go across (lit. inside) the boundary for the airfield.

*had.*
*kaam karneeuaalee loog hauaaii jahaaz-kee maidaan-kii had-kee andar na-jaaẽẽ.*

landed property
That's army property.

*milkiiat.*
*uoo fauj-kii milkiiat hai.*

contract
If you'll go with me I'll take you to the clerk, who'll make out a contract.

*ʀheekaa.*
*agar aap meeree saath čalẽẽ, too mãĩ aap-koo munšii-kee paas lee jaaũũ-gaa, joo ʀheekee-kaa ḳaaḳaz banaa dee-gaa.*



Digitized by Google

Aziz:

workman *mazduur.*

If we get enough workmen we can do it in a month. *agar kaafii mazduur hõõ, too ham eek mahiinee-mẽẽ kar saktee hãĩ.*

## Months[1]

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| January | *januarii,* | July | *julaaii,* |
| February | *faruarii,* | August | *agast,* |
| March | *maarč,* | September | *sitambar,* |
| April | *aprail,* | October | *aktuubar,* |
| May | *maii,* | November | *nauambar,* |
| June | *juun,* | December | *disambar.* |

## Additional Numbers and Measures

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| quarter, one fourth, | *paaoo,* | 3¾ | *paunee čaar,* |
| one third | *tehaaii,* | 4¼ | *sauaa nau,* |
| kos (about 2 miles) | *koos,* | 250.000 | *aʀhaaii laakh,* |
| mun (about 80 pounds) | *man.* | 550 | *saaʀhee pããč sau.* |

[1] These European month names are just as widely used as the ritual terms of Hindus and Moslems.



Digitized by Google

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

1. a. *uahãã jaanaa mumkin hai* 'going there is possible; it is possible to go'
   b. *uahãã jaanee-kee liiee kiaa karũũ* 'for going there, what shall I do; what shall I do to go there?'
   c. *uahãã jaanee-kii ummiid hai* 'there is hope of (his) going there; [he] has hopes to go there'

Note the three different ways in which Hindustani renders expressions like 'TO go, TO do'. They become quite clear when you remember that the infinitive in *-naa* is just a masculine noun, the *-naa* meaning something like "-ing" in *jaanaa* 'the going', *piinaa* 'the drinking'. Compare:

| | |
|---|---|
| *jaanaa mumkin hai* | 'a going is possible' |
| *kiraaiaa mumkin hai* | 'a rent is possible' |
| *jaanee-kee liiee* | 'for a going, (in order) to go' |
| *kiraaee-kee liiee* | 'for (the purpose of) rent' |
| (N.B. *-koo* may replace *-kee liiee : jaanee-koo* 'in order to go') | |
| *jaanee-kii ummiid* | 'the hope of going; to go' |
| *kiraaee-kii ummiid* | 'the hope for rent' |

2. *patthar milnaa muškil hai*
or: *pattharõõ-kaa milnaa muškil hai* 'it is difficult to get stones'

These two constructions are equally good Hindustani. In the first version, *patthar* is found in the straight case, just like in the simple statement *patthar miltee hãī*. *patthar milnaa muškil hai* can be rendered slavishly by "STONES being available is difficult."



Digitized by Google

In the second version, *pattharõõ-kaa* is made to describe the following noun, *milnaa:* "the being available OF STONES is difficult."

Other examples are:

*baččõõ-koo deekhnaa mumkin hai* (compare the simple *baččõõ-koo deekhtaa hũũ*): 'seeing the children is possible,' vs.

*baččõõ-kaa deekhnaa mumkin hai* 'the seeing of the children is possible.'

Both versions are best translated by: "It is possible *to see* the children."

3. a. *andhaa hoonee-kaa xatraa hai* "[he] is in danger of getting blind"

b. *bahᵉree hoonee-kaa Dar hai* "[he] is in danger of getting deaf"

Ordinary adjectives preceding oblique infinitives may be treated in a similar manner:

a. In the first version *andhaa* is in the straight case, just as in the simple sentence: *uoo andhaa hootaa hai* 'he becomes blind'.

b. In the second version, *bahᵉree* agrees with the following oblique infinitive, just as it would in *bahᵉree laRkee-kaa* vs. *bahᵉraa laRkaa*.

Another example would be:

*khaRaa hoonee-see* (or: *khaRii hoonee-see*, of a woman), vs.
*khaRee hoonee-see*

Both mean 'on account of standing'.

N.B. Some speakers use only the second version (in which the adjective agrees with the following infinitive).



Digitized by Google

## B. SUBJUNCTIVE FOLLOWED BY *TOO*

*eek čhooTaa kamraa darbaan-kee liiee hoo, too Thiik hai* 'if there is a small room for the watchman, that will be fine'

Here we find a construction equivalent to an English "if"-sentence, which is just like the one with *agar* followed by the subjunctive (see Unit 17, *Comment B*), except that *agar* is left out. The subjunctive and the following *too* makes perfectly clear how the two clauses of the sentence are related to each other. Note that the *too*-clause, in these cases, often runs *too Thiik hai* '(if . . . ,) that'll be OK.'

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Which would you say if:

1. you need bricks:
   a. *mujh-koo kuč īĩTẽẽ čaahiiee.*
   b. *mujh-koo kiilõõ-kii zaruurat hai.*
   c. *īĩtẽẽ maujuud hãĩ.*

2. you want to know which tools to use for a job:
   a. *kiaa ham auzaar-kaa intezaar karẽẽ?*
   b. *kis baRhaii-see intezaam karaaũũ.*
   c. *kaun-see auzaarõõ-koo istemaal karũũ.*

3. you want to say: "This metal is not hard enough":
   a. *iee dhaar kaafii teez nahĩĩ.*
   b. *iee dhaat kaafii saxt nahĩĩ.*
   c. *iee taar kaafii saxt nahĩĩ.*

4. you want to say: "there was too little water in the lake":
   a. *paanii ziaadaa giilaa thaa.*
   b. *jhiil-mẽẽ thooRaa paanii thaa.*
   c. *paanii-mẽẽ thooRii thooRii kiilẽẽ thĩĩ.*
   d. *jhiil-mẽẽ čhooTee čhooTee jaal thee.*



Digitized by Google

5. you complain about the shortage of labor:
   a. *mahᵉfuuz loog maujuud nahĩĩ.*
   b. *kaam karnee-kee liiee kooii mazduur loog nahĩĩ miltee.*
   c. *mazbuut aadmiiõõ-kaa milnaa bahot muškil hai.*

6. you want a saw:
   a. *aarii diijiiee.*
   b. *mujh-koo kulhaaʀii čaahiiee.*
   c. *maartaul čaahᵉtaa hũũ.*
   d. *čuunaa kahãã milee-gaa.*

7. you cannot remember the location of a certain bridge:
   a. *uoo phal kahãã hai.*
   b. *jis pul-kii baabat baat kii uoo kahãã hai.*
   c. *joo phuul tum-nee dee diiee uoo mujh-koo maaluum nahĩĩ kee kis jagaa rakh diiee.*
   d. *khiil kahãã thii.*

8. you inquire about the quality of certain stones:
   a. *iee patthar kaisaa hai.*
   b. *kiaa iee paᴛᴛii ačchii hoo-gii?*
   c. *is-kaa pataa kiaa hai.*

9. you want to say "there is a brook behind the house":
   a. *ghar-kee niičee giilaa hai.*
   b. *ghar-kee piičhee naalaa hai.*
   c. *ghar-kee piičhee jhiil hai.*
   d. *ghar-kee niičee naḳšaa hai.*

10. somebody asks you why you aren't using your hammer:
    a. *rang-kii uajaa-see.*
    b. *ranj hoonee-see.*
    c. *zang-kii uajaa-see.*

2. Answer the following questions in Hindustani:

1. *imaarat banaanee-kee auzaar kaun-see hãĩ.*
2. *xariidnee aur kiraaee-par leenee-mẽẽ kiaa faraḳ hai.*
3. *maartaul kin čiizõõ-see banaa hai.*
4. *tasuiir laᴛkaanee-kee liiee kaun-sii čiizõõ-kii zaruurat hai.*
5. *jhiil aur nadii-mẽẽ faraḳ kiaa hai.*
6. *mačhliiõõ-koo kaisee pakaʀtee hãĩ.*
7. *"mahᵉfuuz"-kaa matlab angreezii-mẽẽ kiaa hai.*
8. *mačhliiãã kahãã rahᵉtii hãĩ.*



Digitized by Google

9. *nakšaa kis-kee liiee istemaal kiiaa jaataa hai.*
10. *pattharõõ aur īĩTõõ-mẽẽ kiaa farak hai.*
11. *amriikaa-mẽẽ imaartẽẽ kis čiiz-see banii hãĩ.*
12. *amriikaa-kii hadẽẽ kitnii aur kahãã hãĩ.*
13. *gudaam kiaa hai.*
14. *nakšee-mẽẽ uttar kis taraf hai.*

3. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences:

1. *čiTThii bheejn------ Tikit čaahiiee.*
2. *čiTThii bheejn------ muškil hai.*
3. *khuuãã khoodn------ kiaa īĩTẽẽ istemaal kii jaatii hãĩ?*
4. *jiitn------ xuaahiš hai.*
5. *šaraab------ miln------ mumkin nahīĩ.*
6. *ghar------ banuaan------ iraada hai.*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Mr. Das has a job for Mr. Nazir.

Das: *kiaa iahãã-kii zamiin sab taraf giilii hai?*

Nazir: *aap-kee baaĩĩ taraf, baRee gudaam-kee piičhee, kuch suukhii jagaa hai.*

Das: *uoo kis-kii milkiiat-mẽẽ hai.*

Nazir: *eek hissaa too sarkaar-kaa hai aur duusraa meeraa hai.*

Das: *kiaa tum baRhaii-kaa kaam kartee hoo?*

Nazir: *jii hãã. agar aap-koo kuch banuaanaa hoo, too mãĩ xušii-see zamiin kiraaee-mẽẽ dũũ-gaa, aur joo kuch*[1] *čaahẽẽ banaaũũ-gaa.*

[1] 'whatever'.

Das: *mujh-koo eek čhooTee čhooTee doo kamrõõ-kaa ghar čaahiiee.*
*bahot mazbuut hoonee-kii zaruurat nahīĩ leekin āādhii aur tuufaan-see mahᵉfuuz hoo.*
*is jagaa-mẽẽ ghar kis čiiz-see banee hãĩ.*

Nazir: *ziaadaa-tar lakRii-see janaab, īĩTẽẽ māhᵉgii hãĩ.*

Das: *patthar kuch nahīĩ miltee?*

Nazir: *uoo pul bannee-kee baad, phir kisii-nee patthar istemaal nahīĩ kiiee.*
*leekin agar aap paisaa dẽẽ, too pahaaR-see milnaa aasaan hai.*

Digitized by Google

2. Mr. Lal has sent for Mr. Nazir.

Nazir: *māī baʀhaii hũũ aur čaar mazduurõõ-koo apnee saath laaiaa.*

Lal: *kiaa tum kuuãã khoodnaa jaantee hoo?*

Nazir: *jii hãã.*
*kiaa auzaar hãī?*

Lal: *piičhee-kee gudaam-mẽẽ hãī. deekh-kar bataaiiee kee uoo ʈhiik hãī.*

* * *

Nazir: *maī-nee deekhaa janaab.*
*joo auzaar dhaat-see banee hãī, uoo too zang lagnee-see bilkul xarab hoo gaee.*
*aariiõõ-mẽẽ-see eek ʈuuʈii bhii hai.*
*maartaul-kii lakʀii giilee hoo jaanee-see xaraab hoo gaii.*
*kaafii kiilẽẽ nahĩī.*

Lal: *too uaapas jaanaa čaahiiee?*

Nazir: *jii hãã. doo tiin ghanʈee-kee baad phir aaẽẽ-gee.*

Lal: *auzaarõõ-kee alaauaa kiaa čaahiiee.*

Nazir: *sab maujuud hai; janaab. mazduur hãī.*

Lal: *kitnaa uaḳt lagee-gaa.*

Nazir: *too sab čiizẽẽ laa-kar kaam šuruu karoo, aur fuzuul baat mat-karoo.*



*jitnaa gahᵉraa kuuãã čaahᵉtee hãī, kitnaa ziaadaa uaḳt lagee-gaa.*

3. Aziz wants to rent a building.

Aziz: *aap apnaa gudaam kitnee kiraaee-par dẽẽ-gee.*

Ram Lal: *aap kis liiee čaahᵉtee hãī.*

Aziz: *lakʀii aur ġalla xariidnee-kee liiee sarkar-nee mujh-koo ʈheekaa diiaa, aur is liiee mujh-koo eek baʀee gudaam-kii zaruurat hai.*
*uoo kitnaa lambaa hai.*

Ram Lal: *takriiban čaar sau gaz lambaa aur doo sau gaz čauʀaa hai.*

Aziz: *mazbuut aur mahᵉfuuz bhii hai?*

Ram Lal: *uoo ĩĩʈõõ aur patthar-kaa banaa*[1] *hai.*
*čhat-kii lakʀii-par dhaat-kii bahot mazbuut kiilẽẽ lagii hãī.*
*čaarõõ taraf zamiin suukhii aur saxt hai.*

Aziz: *us-mẽẽ kitnee daruaazee hãī.*

Ram Lal: *sirf eek baʀaa daruaazaa hai, aur meeraa darbaan hameešaa uahãã maujuud hai.*

Aziz: *šaher-kii had-see aap-kii milkiiat kitnii duur hai.*

[1] 'made of'

Digitized by Google

Ram Lal: *māī aap-koo nakšee-mẽẽ dikhaataa hũũ.*
*baaīī taraf iee baRaa naalaa bah$^{e}$taa hai.*
*baariš-kee dinõõ-mẽẽ us-kii dhaar bahot teez hai, leekin paar karnee-kee liiee us-par bahot aččhaa pul hai.*

Aziz: *iee jhiil bhii aap-kii milkiiat-mẽẽ hai?*

Ram Lal: *iee jhiil uahãã fuzuul nahīī.*
*loogõõ-koo jaal-see mačhlii pakaRnee-kaa Theekaa deetaa hũũ.*
*is-kee baazuu-kii giilii zamiin kheetii-kee liiee aččhii hai.*

Aziz: *kiaa jhiil-kaa paanii piinee-kee liiee Thiik hai?*

Ram Lal: *piinee-kee liiee kuuẽẽ-kaa paanii istemaal kartee hãī, joo doo baras guzree māī-nee khoodaa.*

Aziz: *too phir kheet-mẽẽ kaam karneeuaalõõ-kee liiee eek čhooTee makaan[1]-kii zaruurat hai.*

Ram Lal: *laRaaii-kii uajaa-see kaariigar, baRhaii, aur mazduurõõ-kaa milnaa bahot muškil hai.*
*is-kee alaauaa gaaree-kee liiee čuunaa aur baaluu kiaa intezaam hoo saktaa hai.*

Aziz: *iee too sarkaar-kaa Theekaa hai.*
*mujh-koo sab kisim-kaa saamaan xariidnee-kii xaas ijaazat mil saktii hai.*
*kiaa aap-kee paas kooii auzaar hãī?*

Ram Lal: *meeree gudaam-mẽẽ kulhaaRiiãã, maartaul, aur bahot kisim-kee auzaar maujuud hãī.*
*aariiõõ-mẽẽ kuch zang lagaa hai, leekin uoo Thiik hoo saktii hãī.*

[1] 'house'.

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. You are on a furlough and want to go on a fishing trip. You try to find a person who is familiar with the neighborhood, and ask him where there is a good place for fishing (rivers, sea, lakes, streams) and what kind of fish there are. If he mentions names of fish, let him describe to you what they look like.

b. Describe your home or any other house as fully as you can (location, size, building material, layout, etc.).

c. The army plans to convert a deserted and dilapidated house into barracks. You are detailed to arrange with the local contractor for the necessary repairs, etc. You look the place over together. You

Digitized by Google

find out how much it will cost, how much time it will take, who is going to pay for the tools and materials. Inquire about the reason why the building was deserted (epidemic, bad water, what about walls, etc.).

2. Make up answers and questions on the *Listening In*.

## FINDER LIST

*a*

| | |
|---|---|
| *aarii* (*-ii*) | saw |
| *agast* | August |
| *aprail* | April |
| *aktuubar* | October |
| *auzaar* (masc. pl.) | tools |

*b*

| | |
|---|---|
| *bahᵉnaa* (N) | to stream, to run |
| *baRhaii* | carpenter |

*č*

| | |
|---|---|
| *čunaa* | lime |

*d*

| | |
|---|---|
| *darbaan* | watchman |
| *dhaar* (*-ii*) | current, stream |
| *dhaat* (*-ii*) | metal |
| *disambar* | December |

*f*

| | |
|---|---|
| *faruarii* (*-ii*) | February |
| *fuT* | foot (measure) |
| *fuzuul* | idle |

*g*

| | |
|---|---|
| *gaaraa* | mortar |
| *gaz* | yard (measure) |
| *giilaa* | wet |
| *gudaam* | storehouse |

*h*

| | |
|---|---|
| *had* (*-ii*) | boundary |

*i*

| | |
|---|---|
| *iiT* (*-ii*) | brick |
| *istemaal karnaa* (T) | to use something |

*j*

| | |
|---|---|
| *jaal* | net |
| *januarii* (*-ii*) | January |
| *jhiil* (*-ii*) | lake |
| *julaaii* (*-ii*) | July |
| *juun* | June |

*k*

| | |
|---|---|
| *kiil* (*-ii*) | nail, tack |
| *khoodnaa* (T) | to dig |
| *kiraaiaa* | rent |



Digitized by Google

*koos* kos (about 2 miles)
*kuuãã* the well
*kulhaaʀii* (*-ii*) axe

*l*

*lakʀii* (-ii) wood

*m*

*maarč* March
*maartaul* hammer
*mačhlii* (*-ii*) fish
*mahᵉfuuz* safe
*maii* (*-ii*) May
*man* mun (about 80 pounds)
*mazduur* workman
*maujuud* present, at hand
*miil* (*-ii*) mile
*milkiiat* (*-ii*) landed property

*n*

*naalaa* brook, stream
*nauambar* November
*naḳšaa* map

*p*

*paar karnaa* (T) to cross something
*patthar* stone
*pul* bridge

*s*

*sitambar* September
*suukhaa* dry

*T*

*ʈheekaa* contract

*z*

*zang* rust



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 28

## GAMES

### SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

An American and a Hindu soldier in conversation:

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| Das: | |
| game (sport)<br>to play | *kheel,*<br>*kheelnaa.* |
| What kind of games do people generally play in America? | *amriikaa-mẽẽ, loog ziaadaa-tar kis ḳisim-kee kheel kheeltee hãĩ.* |
| Paul: | |
| custom | *rauaaj* |
| They play a great many different games over there. | *uahãã muxtalif muxtalif ḳisim-kee bahot kheelõõ-kaa rauaaj hai.* |
| Das: | |
| But which is the most popular one (which almost everybody likes)? | *leekin sab-see mašhuur, joo taḳriiban sab loogõõ-koo ḳasand hai, kaun-saa kheel hai.* |
| Paul: | |
| national<br>in reality, really | *ḳaumii,*<br>*dar-haḳiiḳat.* |



Digitized by Google

I think baseball is considered America's national game. People really get a lot of fun out of it.

*meerii raaee-mẽẽ* "baseball" *amriikaa-mẽẽ ḳaumii kheel samjhaa jaataa hai, aur dar-haḳiiḳat loogõõ-koo us-mẽẽ bahot mazaa aataa hai.*

Das:

among themselves
chance, opportunity
Do all soldiers get a chance to play games [among themselves]?

*aapas-mẽẽ,*
*mauḳaa.*
*kiaa sab sipaahii loogõõ-koo aapas-mẽẽ kheelnee-kaa mauḳaa miltaa hai?*

Paul:

practice
often
We don't get so much practice now, but we still play [quite] often.

*mahaaoraa,*
*aksar.*
*ham loogõõ-koo ab itnaa maahaaoraa nahĩĩ, leekin aksar kheeltee hãĩ.*

Das:

objection
If your officer doesn't object, I'd like to see a game.

*uzur.*
*agar aap-kee afsar-koo kuch uzur na-hoo, too mãĩ kheel deekhnaa čaah$^{e}$taa hũũ.*

Paul:

belief
party, team
In fact, I'm sure he'll be glad to arrange a game between your team and ours.

*iaḳiin,*
*paarTii,*
*mujh-koo iaḳiin hai, kee uoo xušii-see aap-kii paarTii-koo hamaaree xilaaf kheelnee-kii ijaazat dee-gaa.*

Das:

jhundee-moondee (a game)
crazy

*jhanDii-munDii,*
*paagal.*



Digitized by Google

Sorry, but we don't know anything about baseball. [Around here,] everybody (lit. 'small and big ones') is crazy about jhundee-moondee.

*ham loog too* "baseball" *nahĩĩ jaantee. jhanDii-munDii-kee kheel-kee liiee čhooTee baRee sab paagal hãĩ.*

Paul:

brief
to explain

*muxtasir,*
*samjhaanaa.*

How do they play that?

*uoo kis taraa kheeltee hãĩ.*

Can you explain it briefly to me?

*kiaa aap muxtasir taur-par mujh-koo samjhaa saktee hãĩ?*

Das:

coin
to throw, toss
turn

*sikkaa,*
*phẽẽknaa,*
*paarii.*

There are two teams (in it).

*us-mẽẽ doo paarTiiãã hootii hãĩ.*

They toss up a rupee or some other coin. The winners [of the toss] open the game. In the next game, the other team will start (lit. and then it's the turn of the other team).

*rupiaa iaa duusraa sikkaa uupar phẽẽktee hãĩ, jiitneeuaalii paarTii kheel šuruu kartii, aur phir duusrii paarTii-kii paarii aatii hai.*

Paul:

distance
ball, sphere
bat

*faaslaa,*
*gẽẽd,*
*ballaa.*

Does one man stand at a certain distance and throw the ball, and another one hit it with a bat?

*too kiaa eek aadmii kuč h faaslee-par khaRaa hoo-kar gẽẽd phẽẽktaa hai, aur duusraa us-koo ballee-see maartaa hai.*

Das:

post, pole
to stick something in . . .
to catch

*jhanDii,*
*gaaRnaa,*
*looknaa.*



Digitized by Google

Yes. They put up ten poles in the playground and [the players] take up their positions ready to catch the ball.

*jii hãã. maidaan-mẽẽ das jhanDiiãã gaaRtee hãĩ, aur gẽẽd looknee-kee liiee khaRee hootee hãĩ.*

Paul:

oh boy
Oh, boy!

*uaah.*
*uaah janaab.*

What (happens) then?

*phir kiaa hootaa hai.*

Das:

to run
If no one has caught the ball, then the batter starts (running) toward the first pole for a run.

*bhaagnaa.*
*agar kisii-nee us-kee gẽẽd-koo na-lookaa, too maarneenaalaa* "run" *banaanee-kee liiee fauran pahᵉlii jhanDii-kii taraa bhaagtaa ḥai.*

Otherwise he's out.

*uarnaa uoo* "out" *hai.*

Every player on the team takes turns playing this way.

*is taraa paarTii-kee sab loog eek eek apnii apnii paarii-see kheeltee hãĩ.*

end
to be defeated, lose
decision
Finally, the decision as to who has won the game is made according to the number of runs.

*axiir,*
*haarnaa,*
*faeslaa.*
*axiir-mẽẽ* "run"-*kii taadaad-kee mutaabiḳ jiitnee aur haarnee-kaa faislaa hootaa hai.*

Paul:

Are there also games that Hindus play (sitting) at home?

*kooii aisee kheel bhii hãĩ, joo hindustaanii loog ghar-mẽẽ baiThee baiThee kheeltee hãĩ?*



Digitized by Google

Das:

card — *taaš,*
die — *pããsaa.*
(Playing) cards and (shooting) dice, etc. — *taaš kheelnaa aur pããsaa phẽẽknaa uagairaa.*

stake — *daaõõ,*
to make something go by, pass — *guzaarnaa.*
Do they bet on the games or do they just play to kill time? — *daaõõ bhii lagaatee hãĩ iaa sirf uaḳt guzaarnee-kee liiee kheeltee hãĩ?*

Das:

gambling, betting — *juuaa,*
luck — *ḳismat,*
to defy — *aazmaanaa,*
bet — *šart.*
Of course they bet. You try your luck and risk your (lit. start betting) money. — *uoo too juuaa hai. ḳismat aazmaanee-kee liiee paisee-kii šart šuruu hoo jaatii hai.*

Paul:

intelligence — *hušiaarii.*
So you've got to be smart, if you want to shoot dice (lit. a die)? — *too pããsaa phẽẽknee-mẽẽ hušiaarii-kii zaruurat hai?*

Das:

gambler, player — *khilaaʀii.*
honest — *iimandaar.*
lucky — *ḳismatuaalaa*
If the dice are O.K., and the players are honest, then it's just a matter of luck (lit. the lucky fellow wins). Otherwise. . . . — *agar pããsaa aslii hai, aur khilaaʀii loog iimandaar hãĩ, too ḳismatuaalaa šaxs jiittaa hai, uarnaa. . . .*



Digitized by Google

Paul:

What are the dice like (lit. 'in looking at them')? *pããsee deekhnee-mẽẽ kaisee hãĩ.*

Das:

There are just numbers and pictures on them. *un-par sirf nambar aur tasuiirẽẽ hãĩ.*

fist *muTThii,*
to shake something *hilaanaa.*
You shake'em (in your fist) and throw'em on the ground. *muTThii-mẽẽ hilaa-kar zamiin-par phẽẽkee jaatee hãĩ.*

Paul:

trick *dhookaa.*
So nobody can cheat (there), can he? *is-mẽẽ too kooii dhookaa nahĩĩ dee saktaa.*

Das:

dishonest *beeiimaan,*
sleeve *aastiin,*
fake, phoney *naklii.*
A dishonest player can [always] put some phoney dice up his sleeve and cheat you while you're playing. *beeiimaan khilaaRii apnii aastiin-mẽẽ naklii pããsee rakh-kar, kheeltee kheeltee dhookaa dee saktaa hai.*

trickery *daġaabaazii,*
accident *ittefaaḳ.*
to be caught *pakaR jaanaa*
If he's caught cheating (lit. if his trickery is caught by accident), then Heaven help him! *agar us-kii daġaabaazii itteefaaḳ-see pakaR gaii, too xudaa haafiz.*



Digitized by Google

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. DOUBLING

1. *roo roo-kar kahaa* '(he, she) wept BITTERLY and said . . .'
   *xušii xušii* 'VERY gladly'

Word doubling is a common stylistic device. It lends emphasis to a number of fixed expressions such as the ones cited.

2. *kooii kooii loog* 'some people'
   *muxtalif muxtalif ḳisim-kaa* 'of different kinds, different kinds of . . .'
   *eek eek apnii apnii paarii-see kheeltee hãĩ* 'they play, one by one according to each one's turn', i.e. 'they take turns playing, one by one'.

Word doubling often implies the meaning "each". It is very frequent in phrases like *eek eek* 'each single one', *duusree duusree* or *muxtalif muxtalif* 'different things (each one different from the other)', *apnaa apnaa* 'each one's own'. *duusrii duusrii taraf bhaagoo* as a command addressed to at least two persons, means 'run along, each one in another (different) direction'. The simple *duusrii taraf bhaagoo* could be addressed to one person, and mean simply 'run in the other direction'.

### B. PARTICIPLES IN -(*T*)*EE*

1. *Duubtee Duubtee bačaa* 'he was saved while going under, he barely escaped drowning'
   *ghar-mẽẽ baiThee baiThee kheeltee hãĩ* 'they play it (while) sitting at home'
   *kheeltee kheeltee dhookaa dee saktaa hãĩ* 'he can cheat you while playing'.



Digitized by Google

The doubled masculine oblique of a participle, either present (*Duubtee Duubtee, kheeltee kheeltee*) or past neuter (*baiṬhee baiṬhee*) may occur before the main verb of the sentence. This construction describes an action which takes place at the same time as the main action ("WHILE") or modifies it. Note that these self-repeating participles always end in -(*t*)*ee*, regardless of number and gender of the subject.

A slight variation of the same construction (with no difference in meaning) is found when the particle in -(*t*)*ee* is followed by *huuee* instead of being doubled: *Duubtee huuee bačaa* 'he escaped drowning'.

2. *uardii pahᵉnee huuee thaa* 'he wore the uniform'

Past transitive participles in -*ee*, either by themselves or followed by *huuee* are used in the way shown above. This is as though we could say in English "the uniform being worn, (*pahᵉnee huuee* or simply *pahᵉnee*) he was [there]". Again, the form is always the one in -*ee* (without any reference to the gender of *uardii*). Another example: *ghanṬii bajaaee čal rahaa hai* 'he is walking, a bell being sounded; he walks striking a bell'.

## C. PAST PARTICIPLES FOLLOWED BY *HOONAA*

*mãĩ bahot thakaa hũũ* 'I am very tired'

*uahãã baiṬhee hãĩ* 'they sit over there'

(To these examples add: *daruaazaa khulaa rakhiiee* 'leave the door open')

In a former unit (16, *Comment* C) we have discussed combinations of past tense forms (past participles) with the verb *hoonaa* in such instances as *inglistaan-see aaiaa hai* 'he has come from England', in other words, 'he IS from England'. Our new examples above are not very much different. All three words in question, *khulaa* 'open', *thakaa* 'tired', and *baiṬhaa* 'sitting down' are really nothing else but past participles: *baiṬhaa*, as you know, from a verb *baiṬhnaa* 'to sit down, to seat oneself'; *khulaa* from *khulnaa* (N) 'to open (itself), to unfold (itself)'; *thakaa* from *thaknaa* (N) (or more frequently *thak jaanaa*) 'to get tired'. It is only for reasons of translation that these words present a little problem by themselves. In fact, we do not translate *khulaa* as 'having become open', or *thakaa* as 'having become tired', —since these words correspond to simple adjectives in English: 'open', 'tired'.



Digitized by Google

Note that a word like *khulaa* may function as an ordinary adjective in Hindustani, too: you may say *khulii khiRkiiãã*, which is just as good as *khulii huuii khiRkiiãã* 'open windows.'

It is necessary to keep the meanings of these phrases apart from the corresponding present tense expressions. *baiThnaa* means 'to sit down, to go into a sitting position, to seat oneself, to have a seat' while *baiThaa hoonaa* means 'to sit, to be in a sitting position, to be sitting'. The simple English verb is not always an unambiguous equivalent.

Here are a few other examples: *laTkaanaa*, as you know, means 'to hang up something'. It has a cognate neuter verb *laTaknaa* 'to get hung up' as in *tasuiir laTak rahii hai* 'the picture is just getting up (on the wall)'. From this distinguish *tasuiir laTkii hai* 'the picture (now) hangs (lit. it is having gotten up)'. *khaRaa hoonaa* 'to stand' looks similar, though there is no full verb to correspond to it.

By way of an additional remark, we should here mention the expression *čalaa gaiaa hoonaa* 'to be gone', a combination of the participles of both *čalnaa* 'to go' and *jaanaa* 'to go' with *hoonaa: čalii gaii hai* 'she is gone', etc.

Note that all these peculiar past participle constructions are formed from neuter verbs. All of them agree with their nouns in number and gender: *daruaazaa khulaa*, *tasuiir laTkii*, etc.

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. Fill in the spaces in the following sentences:

1. *hãs------ hãs------ bhaagtee hãĩ.*
2. *khaa------ khaa------ kaam mat-karoo.*
3. *mujh-see baatčiit kar------ kar------ čaltaa thaa.*
4. *gaa------ gaa------ dhootii hãĩ.*
5. *soo------ soo------ niičee gir gaii.*
6. *iee tiin xat duusr------ ------ jagaa-see aaee haĩĩ.*
7. *sarkaar-kee kaaġaz muxtalif zabaanõõ-mẽẽ čhapee huuee hãĩ.*
8. *har eek šaxs apn------ ------ iahãã uaapas jaaee.*
9. *doo ghanTee-see eek-hii kursii-mẽẽ baiTh------ hũũ.*

2. Say in Hindustani:

1. They kill the time playing all kinds of different games.



Digitized by Google

2. Just when I was sitting down, the bell rang.
3. The door doesn't open easily; and when it's open you can't shut it.
4. He hangs his clothes on a chair every night.
5. Each one go to his house now!
6. Let's take turns driving the car.
7. The stakes aren't the same ('equal') in different games.
8. For some card games you need intelligence, for others just luck.

3. Answer the following questions:

1. *kiaa daas* "baseball" *kheelnaa jaantaa hai?*
2. *sikkaa phẽẽknee-kaa kiaa matlab hai.*
3. *taaš kheelnee-mẽẽ, kiaa ḳismat iaa hušiaarii-kii zaruurat hai.*
4. *jhanDiiãã kitnii hãĩ.*
5. *jhanDiiãã kahãã gaaRii jaatii hãĩ.*
6. *kiaa sab aadmiiõõ-koo gẽẽd phẽẽknee-kaa mauḳaa hai?*
7. *agar gẽẽd lookaa jaaee, too kiaa hootaa hai.*
8. *jiitneeuaalii paarTii kaun-sii hai.*

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. Ram and Aziz are discussing a game.

Ram: *meeree ustaad-nee kahaa, kee doo haftee-kee baad eek paarTii hamaaree xilaaf jhanDii-munDii kheelnee-kee liiee aaee-gii.*

Aziz: *ham loog too bahot kamzoor hãĩ.*
*bahot laRkee gẽẽd looknaa aur ballee-see maarnaa nahĩĩ jaantee.*

Ram: *iee sač hai. leekin ham-koo aapas-mẽẽ kheelnee aur mahaaoraa karnee-kaa bahot mauḳaa hai.*
*abhii doo haftee hãĩ.*

Aziz: *too kal-see bhaagnee-kaa mahaaoraa karẽẽ. mujh-koo kuch uzur nahĩĩ.*

Ram: *dar-haḳiiḳat hamaaraa maidaan bahot čhooTaa hai, aur das jhanDiiãã gaaRnee-kaa kaafii faaslaa nahĩĩ.*

Aziz: *aaj-kal*[1] *too jhanDii-munDii kheelnee-kaa rauaaj nahĩĩ.*
*uoo too garmii-kee mausam-mẽẽ Thiik hai.*

[1] 'nowadays, lately'.

Digitized by Google

Ram: *muxtasir taur-par iee baat mãī apnee ustaad-koo samjhaaũũ-gaa.*

Aziz: *meeraa xiaal hai, kee amriikan sipaahiiõõ-koo iee kheel pasand hoo-gaa.*

Ram: *mujh-koo bhii iaķiin hai, kiõõ-kee* "baseball" *un-kaa mašhuur aur ķaumii kheel hai, aur jhanDii-munDii-kaa kheel usii-kii taraa hai.*

Aziz: *sikkaa uupar phẽẽknee-kee liiee, eek amriikan sipaahii ᴛhiik hoo-gaa.*

Ram: *apnii apnii paarii-see har eek aṭṭhii taraa agar koošiš karee, too ham zaruur jiitẽẽ-gee.*

Aziz: *kheel-kaa faislaa hoo jaanee-kee baad jiitnee- aur haarneeuaalii doonõõ paarᴛiiãã mil-kar, amriikan sipaahiiõõ-kii daauat karẽẽ, aur tamaašee-koo jaẽẽ.*

2. A group of gamblers in court.

*daarooġa: in-loogõõ-kaa kiaa jurm hai.*
*tum in-koo iahãã kiõõ laaee.*

*sipaahii: iee loog juuaa kheeltee thee.*

Aziz: *ham loog ghar-mẽẽ baiᴛhee baiᴛhee reeDiioo*[1] *suntee thee, aur uaķt guzaarnee-kee liiee, taaš kheel rahee.*

[1] 'radio'.

*daarooġaa: kiaa ķismat aazmaanee-kee liiee daam aur paisee-kii šart bhii lagaatee thee?*

Das: *jii nahĩĩ. mãī too iimandaar aadmii hũũ. juuee-kaa khilaaʀii nahĩĩ.*

*sipaahii: iee jhuuᴛ hai. mãī-nee aslii pããsaa is šaxs-kii muᴛᴛhii-mẽẽ deekhaa, aur eek naķlii pããsaa is -kii aastiin-mẽẽ paaiaa.*
*iee daġaabaazii kartaa hai.*

*daarooġaa: doonõõ pããsõõ-kee nambar aur tasuiirẽẽ bilkul eek taraa-kii hãī.*
*kiaa kuċh paisaa bhii uahãã thaa?*

*sipaahii: jii hãã. beeiimaan khilaaʀii bahot dhookaa deetaa hai, aur loog ããkh-see deekhtee deekhtee paisaa haartee hãī.*

*daarooġaa: agar tum loog sač sač saaraa kissaa kahoo-gee, too mãī is dafaa tum-koo maaf kar dũũ-gaa.*
*uarnaa jeel-mẽẽ bheejũũ-gaa.*

Das: *šuruu-mẽẽ meerii ķismat aṭṭhii thii, aur mãī bahot paisaa jiitaa.*
*phir us aadmii-nee daġaabaazii-see mujh-koo dhookaa diiaa.*

Aziz: *daarooġaa saaheb, iee baat sač hai.*



Digitized by Google

*mãĩ kabhii kabhii naḳlii pããsõõ-koo aastiin-see nikaal-kar, muTThii-mẽẽ hilaa-kar zamiin-par phẽẽkṭaa hũũ.*

*aur bahot ittefaaḳ-see haartaa hũũ.*

*sipaahii: iee loog sab sač kahᵉtee hãĩ.*

*ab aap-koo faislaa karnee-kaa axtiaar hai.*

*daarooḡaa: iee sab juuee-kaa paisaa jurmaanee-kee taur-par sarkaar-mẽẽ jaaee-gaa, aur tum loogõõ-koo, jeel-mẽẽ jaanee-see maafii hai.*

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. Describe the organization of American baseball (Leagues, World Series, season, etc.) in simple language.
   b. Describe a simple card game to a person who has never seen a deck of cards in his life. Use as few English words as you can manage.
   c. You find out that your partner has cheated you at a bet in some way. Go to the stakeholder and complain.

2. Here are a few questions on the *Listening In*. Go through it again, answer the questions, and make up more questions and answers.

   a. *ustaad-nee kiaa kahaa.*
   *maidaan čhooTee hoonee-mẽẽ haraj kiaa hai.*
   *sikkaa kaun uupar phẽẽkee-gaa.*
   . . . . .

   b. *un loogõõ-kioo kiõõ giraftaar kiiaa.*
   *kiaa duusree duusree aadmiiõõ-kaa ḳissaa eek-hii hai?*
   *dhookaa kis-nee diiaa.*
   . . . . .

### FINDER LIST

*a*

| | |
|---|---|
| *aapas-mẽẽ* | among themselves |
| *aastiin* (*-ii*) | sleeve |
| *aazmaanaa* (T) | to try (luck) |
| *aksar* | often |
| *axiir* | end |



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| *b* | |
| *ballaa* | bat |
| *beeiimaan* | dishonest |
| *bhaagnaa* (N) | to run |
| *d* | |
| *daaõõ* | stake |
| *dagaabaazii* | trickery |
| *dar-haḳiiḳat* | really |
| *dhookaa* | trick |
| *f* | |
| *faaslaa* | distance |
| *faeslaa* | decision |
| *g* | |
| *gaaRnaa* (T) | to stick something in |
| *gẽẽd* | ball, sphere |
| *guzaarnaa* (T) | to make go by, pass |
| *h* | |
| *haarnaa* (N) | to lose, be defeated |
| *hilaanaa* (T) | to shake something |
| *hušiaarii* | intelligence |
| *i* | |
| *iaḳiin* | belief |
| *iimandaar* | honest |
| *ittefaaḳ* | accident, chance |
| *j* | |
| *jhanDii* (*-ii*) | pole, post |
| *jhanDii-munDii* (*-ii*) | jhundee-moondee (a game) |
| *juaa* | gambling |
| *k* | |
| *kheel* | game |
| *kheelnaa* (N and T) | to play |
| *khilaaRii* | player, gambler |
| *ḳ* | |
| *ḳaumii* | national |
| *ḳismat* (*-ii*) | luck |
| *l* | |
| *looknaa* (T) | to catch |
| *m* | |
| *mahaaoraa* | practice |
| *mauḳaa* | chance |
| *muTThii* (*-ii*) | fist |
| *muxtasir* | brief |



Digitized by Google

*n*

*naklii* fake, phoney

*p*

*paagal* crazy
*paarii* (*-ii*) turn
*paarTii* (*-ii*) party, team
*pããsaa* die
*phẽẽknaa* (T) to throw, toss

*r*

*rauaaj* custom

*s*

*samjhaanaa* (T) to explain
*sikkaa* coin

*š*

*šart* bet

*t*

*taaš* (playing) card

*u*

*uaah* oh boy!
*uzur* objection



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 29

## WAR

### SECTION A—BASIC SENTENCES

| ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS | AIDS TO LISTENING |
|---|---|
| Aziz: | |
| batallion | *palтan,* |
| gallant, heroic | *bahaadur,* |
| medal | *tamɣaa,* |
| speech, address | *taḳriir.* |
| The speech the Viceroy made before awarding decorations to the war heroes of the battalion was very interesting. | *palтan-kee bahaadur sipaahiiõõ-koo tamɣee deenee-kee pahᵉlee uaaesraaee-nee joo taḳriir kii, uoo bahot dilčasp thii.* |
| Ram: | |
| meeting, gathering | *jalsaa.* |
| Where was that (meeting)? Were you there? | *uoo jalsaa kahãã thaa. kiaa aap uahãã maujuud thee?* |
| Aziz: | |
| battle line | *moorčaa,* |
| bed | *ṗalang,* |
| to lie down | *leeтnaa,* |
| radio | *reeDiioo.* |
| I was lying on the bed, listening to the whole story on the radio, about how they had attacked the enemy lines. | *dušman-kee moorčõõ-par hamlaa karnee-kaa saaraa ḳissaa māī-nee, ṗalang-par leeтee leeтee, reeDiioo-mẽẽ sunaa.* |



Digitized by Google

Italy
war
step
to retreat
In the Italian campaign, our soldiers wouldn't retreat an inch.

*iTlii,*
*jang,*
*ķadam,*
*haTnaa* or *piičhee haTnaa.*
***iTlii-kii jang-mẽẽ hamaaree sipaahii eek ķadam bhii piičhee na-haTee.***

daily
forward
to advance
In Burma, too, we're advancing daily.

*roozaanaa,*
*aagee,*
*aagee baRhnaa.*
***barmaa-kii taraf bhii, ham loog roozaanaa aagee baRh rahee hãĩ.***

has lost already
The enemy has lost three positions already.

*haar čukaa.*
***dušman tiin moorčee haar čukaa.***

Now he's fighting on the fourth.

*ab čauthee-par laRtaa hai.*

army
by means of . . .
parachute
victory
Our (army) soldiers went down in the jungles of Burma in parachutes, and won a victory (over the enemy).

*laškar,*
*-ee zariiee-see,*
*čhatrii,*
*fatee.*
***barmaa-kee janglõõ-mẽẽ hamaaree laškar-kee sipaahii čhatrii-ķee zariiee-see niičee aaee, aur us-koo fatee kiiaa.***

prisoner
to surround
responsibility
The paratroopers, [coming] from the rear, (have) surrounded thousands of prisoners.

They've got an awful responsibility.

*ķaidii,*
*gheernaa.*
*zimmeedaarii.*
***čhatriiuaalee sipaahiiõõ-nee dušman-kee hazaarõõ ķaidiiõõ-koo piičhee-see gheer liiaa.***

***uoo bahot zimmeedaarii-kaa kaam hai.***



Digitized by Google

Ram:

rank
sergeant
corporal

My two sons now have good jobs in the army. One's a sergeant, the other a corporal.

*oh°daa,*
*jamaadaar,*
*haualdaar.*
*meeree doonõõ beeTee ab aččhee oh°dõõ-par hãĩ. eek jamaadaar hai, aur duusraa haualdaar.*

Aziz:

Is that so?

*aisaa?*

secret (adjective)

My boy [helped] smash a secret arms factory from the air.

*xufiiaa.*
*meeree laRkee-nee dušman-kee hathiaar banaaneeuaalee xufiiaa kaarxaanee hauaaii jahaaz-see barbaad kiiaa.*

to shoot

They tried to knock out his plane from the ground.

*čalaanaa*
*niičee-see hauaaii jahaaz-par čalaanee-kii koošiš kii.*

Ram:

target
to be aimed at

It must be a difficult business to aim at an airplane (with a gun).

*nišaanaa,*
*nišaanaa lagnuaa.*
*hauaaii jahaaz-par banduuk-kaa nišaanaa lagnaa muškil baat hoo.*

speed
to vanish

It(s speed)'s quick as a lightning.

*raftaar,*
*ġaaeb hoonaa.*
*us-kii raftaar bijlii-kii taraa teez hai.*

And it disappears right from before your eyes.

*deekhtee deekhtee ġaaeb hoo jaataa hai.*

honor

Your son will get a medal of honor from the government, I guess.

*izzat.*
*too sarkaar-see aap-kee laRkee-koo izzat-kaa tamġaa mileegaa.*



Digitized by Google

Aziz:

gold
belt
to award
sergeant major

The government (has) awarded him a gold belt[1], and now he's a sergeant major.

*soonaa,*
*čapraas,*
*inaam deenaa,*
*suubeedaar.*

*sarkaar-nee us-koo eek soonee-kii čapraas inaam dii, aur ab uoo suubeedaar hai.*

Ram:

ball, bullet
gunpowder, ammunition

Your brother, who has (lit. takes) the ammunition contract, — when is he coming?

*goolaa,*
*goolaa-baaruud.*

*aap-kee bhaaii, joo goolee-baaruud-kaa Theekaa leetee hãĩ, kab aaẽẽ-gee?*

Aziz:

He didn't say.

*nahĩĩ kahaa.*

shelter

It seems, from his letters, that people don't have to stay in air-raid shelters any more.

*tah$^{e}$xaanaa.*

*un-kee xat-see maaluum hootaa hai, kee loogõõ-koo tah$^{e}$xaanee-mẽẽ rah$^{e}$nee-kii ab zaruurat nahĩĩ.*

Ram:

army engineer
camp, encampment

Did you know that the engineers' battalion is going to be in town tomorrow?

*safarmainaa,*
*paRaaoo.*

*kiaa aap jaantee hãĩ, kee safarmainaa palTan-kaa paRaaoo kal hamaaree šaher-mẽẽ hai?*

duty, obligation
departure of an army

We ought to give them a party before they go off.

*farz,*
*kuuč.*

*ham loogõõ-kaa farz hai, kee kuuč-kee pah$^{e}$lee sipaahiiõõ-kii daauat karẽẽ.*

[1] An award in the Indian Army.



Digitized by Google

Aziz:

department
nurse

My daughter is going to start work as a nurse in the Red Cross (department).

*mahokmaa,*
*nars.*

*meerii laʀkii* "Red Cross"*-kee mahokmee-mẽẽ nars-kaa kaam šuruu karee-gii.*

service
sympathy, feeling

She feels very strongly about doing something for our wounded men.

*xidmat,*
*hamdardii.*

*zaxmii sipaahiiõõ-kii xidmat karnee-mẽẽ us-koo bahot hamdardii hai.*

belonging to the country, political
patriot, patriotic

That's what I said to my neighbors yesterday: folks, if you've got any patriotism, you've got to do something [about it, too].

*mulkii,*
*mulkii-xairxuaah.*

*kal mãĩ-nee mahollee-kee loogõõ-see kahaa, kee ai bhaaiioo agar tum mulkii-xairxuaah hoo, too sab-koo kuch karnaa čaahiiee.*

You can't win this war sitting home.

*ghar-mẽẽ baiṬhee baiṬhee, laʀaaii nahĩĩ jiit saktee.*

Ram:

strength

The enemy doesn't have the strength to stop [our] attacks now.

*taaḳat.*

*ab dušman-mẽẽ hamlee rooknee-kii taaḳat nahĩĩ.*

starvation
to be starving

Their people are starving . . .

*faaḳaa,*
*faaḳaa karnaa,*

*loog faaḳaa kar rahee hãĩ.*

bayonet
to be gone

and the war factories are gone.

*sangiin,*
*čalaa jaanaa.*

*hathiaar aur sangiinõõ-kee kaarxaanee čalee gaee.*



Digitized by Google

Our army has surrounded their country from all sides.

*hamaarii fauj-nee us-kaa mulk sab taraf-see gheer liiaa.*

defeat
to be defeated
They're sure to lose.

*šikast,*
*šikast maannaa.*
***us-koo šikast maannaa paʀee-gaa.***

Aziz:

success
to celebrate
Yes, he said the same thing in that speech. [This is what he said:] "(You brave) soldiers and fellow countrymen, the day is not far off, on which we can celebrate (the happiness of) our [final] success."

*kaamiiaabii,*
*manaanaa.*
*iehii baat unhõõ-nee taḳriir-mẽẽ kahii, kee ai bahaadur sipaahiioo, aur ai mulkii bhaaiioo, kaamiiaabii-kii xušii manaanee-kaa din ab bahot duur nahĩĩ.*

## SECTION B—WORD STUDY

### A. VOCATIVE

1. *ai bhaaii* 'you, fellow!'
   *ai laʀkee* 'hey, son!'
2. *ai bahaa̤dur sipaahiioo* '[my] brave soldiers!'
   *ai mulkii bhaaiioo* '[my] fellow countrymen!'

Nouns have a special calling form or VOCATIVE which is sometimes used in addressing a person—when you shout at someone, talk to a group of people, etc. In the singular (1) it is merely like the oblique: *bhaaii, laʀkee* (ONE



Digitized by Google

boy is addressed!). In the plural (2), the vocative ending is *-oo*. This ending replaces the "changing" *-aa* (*laʀkoo* '[my] sons!'); otherwise it is added to the end of the noun (*raajaaoo* 'princes!', *doostoo* 'friends!', *laʀkiioo* 'girls!'). In other words, it is like the oblique plural except that it is not nasalized.

Adjectives accompanying vocatives are in the oblique: *ai meeree doostoo* 'my friends!'.

As our examples show, vocatives (with their describing adjectives) form little sentences by themselves. These sentences usually start with an exclamation such as *ai*, which functions like a pronounced exclamation mark.

### B. *ČUKAA*

*dušman tiin moorčee haar čukaa* 'the enemy has already lost four positions'

*čukaa* is the past tense form of a neuter verb which hardly occurs except in the past tense. It is preceded by a verb stem (much like *saknaa*). The meaning of *kar čukaa* is '(I, he . . .) has (or: had) done . . . already'.

## SECTION C—WHAT WOULD YOU SAY?

1. How would you address a gathering as
   1. officers,
   2. strangers,
   3. women,
   4. Moslems of this province,
   5. teachers,
   6. wretched fellows,
   7. servants,
   8. people of Burma,
   9. nurses,
   10. carpenters,
   11. my relatives,
   12. watchmen of the palace.

2. You want to attract the attention of one of the following persons by shouting:
   1. sailor!
   2. uncle!



Digitized by Google

3. nephew!
4. doctor!
5. driver!
6. clerk!
7. (you) people!
8. cashier!
9. soldiers!
10. inspector!
11. nurse!
12. operator!

3. Answer the following questions:

1. *uaaesraaee-nee taḳriir kab kii.*
2. *tamɡee kis-koo dee diiee.*
3. *kiaa raam aur aziiz maujuud thee?*
4. *raam-kee beeTõõ-kaa kaam kiaa hai.*
5. *aziiz-kee beeTee kiaa kartee hãĩ.*
6. *aziiz-nee mahollee-kee loogõõ-see kiaa kahaa.*
7. *dušman-koo šikast kiõõ maannaa hoo-gaa.*

4. Pick the correct sentence:

1. a. *un-koo piiṭhee haTtee haTtee laRaaii jiitnaa paReegaa.*
   b. *un-koo aagee baRhtee baRhtee laRaaii jiitnaa paReegaa.*
2. a. *suubeedaar loog haualdaarõõ-koo hukum deetee hãĩ.*
   b. *suubeedaar loogõõ-koo haualdaarõõ-kee hukum maannaa čaahiiee.*
3. a. *xufiiaa hathiaar-kee zariiee čhatriiuaalii fauj-koo fatee karnee-kii koošiš kii.*
   b. *xufiiaa hathiaar-kee zariiee čhatriiuaalee sipaahiiõõnee faaḳaa kiiaa.*

5. Say in Hindustani:

1. These medals are awarded for secret service.
2. The prisoners have ('are of') different ranks; some are officers, some are ordinary soldiers.
3. He was awarded high (*baRaa*) honors for his success.
4. The prisoners are starving.
5. The parachute factory was attacked from the air; it is almost completely destroyed.
6. The government departments are now far away from the battle lines.
7. The parachute batallion had been attacked a number of times already; now it has been completely defeated.



Digitized by Google

8. These shelters are (built) against air attacks. They were built by army engineers; they are supposed to be strong and safe. (Use *maaluum* or *samajhnaa*).

9. The corporal gave orders to retreat because we had been completely surrounded.

10. Our sergeant was awarded the belt of honor after he had been killed.

## SECTION D—LISTENING IN

1. A veteran returns.

Aziz: *kiaa hindustaanii palTan-kee sipaahiiõõ-koo iTlii-kii ThanDii bardaašt hai?*

Das: *mãĩ too doo saal moorćee-par uahaãã thaa.*
*ThanDii-mẽẽ aksar ham-loogõõ-nee dušman-par hamlaa kiiaa.*

Aziz: *kiaa aap čhatriiuaalii fauj-mẽẽ thee.*

Das: *hauaaii jahaaz-see goolaa-baaruud aur hathiaar uaġairaa-kee kaarxaanõõ-koo barbaad karnaa meeraa kaam thaa.*

Aziz: *banduuk-kee nišaanee-see hauaaii jahaaz-koo kis taraa bačaatee hoo.*

Das: *us-kii raftaar bijlii-kii taraa teez hai. deekhtee deekhtee gaaeb hoo jaataa hai.*
*sab loog Dar-kii uajaa-see tah$^{e}$xaanõõ-mẽẽ rah$^{e}$tee hãĩ.*

Aziz: *hindustaanii nars aur Daakṭar bhii uahãã hãĩ.*

Das: *zaxmii sipaahiiõõ-see un-koo bahot hamdardii hai, aur un-kii bahot xidmat kartii hãĩ.*

Aziz: *mujh-koo ummiid hai, kee dušman-koo jaldii šikast hoo-gii.*
*aur ham-loog fatee-kii xušii manaaẽẽ-gee.*

Das: *agar aap sab mulkii-xairxuaah loog rasab-kaa saamaan baraabar bheejoo, too kaamiaabii hoonaa jaldii mumkin hai.*

Aziz: *iee sać hai. kal mãĩ aap loogõõ-koo tamġee uaġairaa milnee-kii taḳriir reeDiioo-mẽẽ sunũũ-gaa.*

2. A speech by an army officer.

*ai meeree bahaadur sipaahiioo.*

*jang-kee maidaanõõ-mẽẽ tum sab-koo joo muškilẽẽ*[1] *aur*

[1] 'hardships'.



Digitized by Google

*takliifẽẽ bardaašt karnaa paRīī, aur jis bahaadrii*[2]*-see tum-nee dušman-par hamlaa kiiaa, aur us-kee moorčõõ-koo eek eek·kar-kee tooRaa aur xandaķõõ-par ķabzaa kar-kee us-koo šikast dii, un-kaa šukriiaa karnaa mumkin nahīī.*

*aksar pahaaRõõ-par čaRh*[3]*-kar aur nadiiõõ-koo paar kar-kee dušman-kee hazaarõõ ķaidiiõõ-koo gheernaa kuč aasaan kaam na-thaa.*

*hauaaii jahaazõõ-see goola-baaruud aur hathiaarõõ-kee kaarxaanee barbaad karnee-mẽẽ bahot bahaadrii dikhaaiaa.*

*haalãã-kee čhatriiuaalii fauj-kee sipaahiiõõ-kii zim-medaarii bahot saxt thii, leekin un-koo apnee marnee -kaa kuč Dar na-thaa.*

*niičee aa-kar piičhee-see dušman-par hamlaa kiiaa aur gheer liiaa.*

[2] 'heroism'.
[3] 'climb'.

*safarmainaa palTan-kee sipaahii dušman-koo fatee kar-kee hameešaa aagee baRhee.*

*aur eek ķadam bhii piičhee na-haTee. aur hameešaa bahaadrii-kee saath laRee.*

*banduuķ-kee nišaanee-see dušman-kee hazaarõõ hauaaii jahaaz niičee giraaee.*

*sangiinõõ-kii laRaaii-mẽẽ dušman-kee laškar-koo bhagaaiaa*[4]*.*

*iTlii-kii jang-mẽẽ jab dušman-nee ķilca gheer liiaa, hathiaar aur rasad*[5]*-kaa saamaan xatam-kee ķariib thaa, baraabar laRee aur madad aanee-tak ķilee-koo haath-see na-jaanee diiee.*

*aaj sarkaar-kii taraf-see haualdaar, jamaadaar, aur suubeedaar-kee oh°dee izzat-kee tamgee aur čapraas deenee-mẽẽ mujh-koo bahot xušii hai.*

[4] 'rout'.
[5] 'supplies'.

## SECTION E—CONVERSATION

1. a. Suppose you have come back to your home town from the war. Make a speech on behalf of a War Loan Drive, describing an incident from the battlefield. Answer questions from the floor.

   b. Make up a newspaper story on a transport of prisoners, with individual interviews, etc.

   c. An argument between a soldier and a munitions worker on the role of soldiers and civilians in the



Digitized by Google

war. The worker mentions the sacrifices and dangers which people undergo at home, while the soldier tells of his battle experiences.

2. Make up questions and answers on the *Listening In*.

## FINDER LIST

*a*

*aagee* — forward
*aagee baʀhnaa* (N) — to advance

*b*

*bahaadur* — gallant, heroic
*baʀhnaa* (N) — to swell

*č*

*čalaa jaanaa* (N) — to be gone
*čalaanaa* (T) — to shoot
*čapraas* — belt
*čhatrii* (*-ii*) — parachute
*čuknaa* (N) — to have finished, to have already . . .

*f*

*faaḳaa* — starvation
*faaḳaa karnaa* (T) — to be starving
*farz* — duty
*fatee* (*-ii*) — victory

*g*

*gheernaa* (T) — to surround
*goolaa* — ball, bullet
*goolaa-baaruud* — gunpowder, ammunition

*ġ*

*ġaaeb hoonaa* (N) — to vanish

*h*

*hamdardii* (*-ii*) — sympathy, feeling
*haᴛnaa* (N) — to retreat
*haualdaar* — corporal

*i*

*inaam deenaa* (T) — to award
*iᴛlii* (*-ii*) — Italy
*izzat* (*-ii*) — honor

*j*

*jalsaa* — meeting, gathering
*jamaadaar* — sergeant
*jang* — war

*k*

*kaamiaabii* (*-ii*) — success
*kuuč* — departure, marching off

*ḳ*

*ḳadam* — step
*ḳaidii* — prisoner



Digitized by Google

*l*

| | |
|---|---|
| *laškar* | army |
| *leeTnaa* (N) | to lie down |

*m*

| | |
|---|---|
| *mahokmaa* | department |
| *manaanaa* (T) | to celebrate |
| *moorčaa* | battle line, position |
| *mulkii* | belonging to the county, political |
| *mulkii-xairxuaah* | patriotic |

*n*

| | |
|---|---|
| *nars* | nurse |
| *nišaanaa* | target |
| *nišaanaa lagnaa* | to be aimed at |

*o*

| | |
|---|---|
| *oh°daa* | rank, office |

*p*

| | |
|---|---|
| *palang* | bed |
| *palTan* | batallion |
| *paRaaoo* | camp, encampment |

*r*

| | |
|---|---|
| *raftaar* (*-ii*) | speed |
| *reeDiioo* | radio |
| *roozaanaa* | daily |

*s*

| | |
|---|---|
| *safarmainaa* | engineer (army) |
| *sangiin* | bayonet |
| *soonaa* | gold |
| *suubeedaar* | sergeant major |

*š*

| | |
|---|---|
| *šikast* (*-ii*) | defeat |
| *šikast maannaa* | to suffer defeat |

*t*

| | |
|---|---|
| *taakat* (*-ii*) | strength |
| *tah°xaanaa* | shelter |
| *takriir ii* | speech, address |
| *tamgaa* | medal |

*x*

| | |
|---|---|
| *xidmat* (*-ii*) | service |
| *xufiiaa* | secret (adj.) |

*z*

| | |
|---|---|
| *-ee zariiee-see* | by means of . . . |
| *zimmeedaarii* (*-ii*) | responsibility |



Digitized by Google

# UNIT 30

## REVIEW

### SECTION A—WHAT DO YOU KNOW IN HINDUSTANI?

*To the Group Leader:* As in Unit 24, *Section A* consists of five Hindustani passages which are to be read by the Guide (or by one of the group members if you have no Guide). The questions to be answered (in English!) are printed below. Before you begin, be sure that everyone has a sheet of paper and a pen or pencil. Give the group two minutes to look over the questions on the first passage; then have the passage read; then give them three minutes to write their answers; then two minutes to look over the questions on the second passage; and so on, until the questions on all five passages have been answered. Then go back and correct all answers.

This unit is again a review of the work covered up to now. As in Unit 24, the first section consists of five German passages which your Guide will read to you, and about which you are asked questions. Before each passage is read you will be given time to familiarize yourself with the questions that are asked on it; after it has been read you will be given time to write down your answers IN ENGLISH. Don't try to answer any of the questions while the passage is being read; when you do write down your answers, make them short and to the point. After you have answered the questions on all five passages, your Guide or Group Leader will go over your answers, and correct them with you.

I.

1. *Tailiifuunuaalii laRkii kahãã-see baat kartii hai.*
2. *daas-nee ṣalat nambar kiõõ bulaaiaa.*
3. *paisaa deenaa kis-koo čaahiiee.*
4. *daas-nee kitnii dafaa bulaaiaa.*
5. *Tailiifuunuaalii kiaa karee-gii*

II.

1. *jaapaaniiõõ-nee kis ḳisim-kaa nuḳsaan diiaa.*
2. *kitnee sipaahii mar gaee, aur kitnee zaxmii hoo gaee.*
3. *joo mar gaee, uoo kahãã dafan hoo gaee.*



Digitized by Google

4. *kiaa kooii duusree zaxmii loog xandḳõõ-mẽẽ hãĩ?*
5. *jaapaaniiõõ-koo axiir-mẽẽ kiaa huuaa.*

III.

1. *uoo imaarat kis-kee liiee hai.*
2. *kis čiiz-see banii hai.*
3. *us-koo banaanee-mẽẽ kaun-sii čiiz-kaa milnaa sab-see ziaadaa muškil thii.*
4. *kiaa zamiin-mẽẽ khoodnee-kii zaruurat thii?*

IV.

1. *kheel-kii paarTiiãã kaun-sii thĩĩ.*
2. *kheel kab kheelaa gaiaa.*
3. *kaun-sii pɑarTii haar gaii.*
4. *kheel-kee baad kiaa huuaa.*
5. *daaroogaa-nee kiaa kahaa.*

V.

1. *hamlaa kis uaḳt šuruu hoo gaiaa.*
2. *tamṣaa kis-koo inaam diiaa.*
3. *jis sipaahii-koo inaam diiaa, us-nee kiaa kahaa.*
4. *ḳaidii loog kitnee thee.*
5. *hukum deeneeuaalee sipaahii-kaa oh°daa kiaa thaa.*

## SECTION B—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

Practice the Hindustani for the following sentences. This is individual study.

1. My father isn't used (*aadat*) to talking over the phone.
2. He got shot in the leg, but he's quite cheerful.
3. I'm sorry, but this building was rented (already) when you came.
4. They're playing among themselves.
5. We've already won a great victory.
6. You told me to call at ten past eight last night; but when I did, nobody answered.
7. This letter weighs two chatanks.
8. These people here have got lung trouble.
9. Let's try and swim across the river.
10. A wooden hammer is no good.
12. It's difficult to get workers.
13. They haven't got a chance of cheating us.



Digitized by Google

14. You can get the apples by shaking the tree.
15. The paratroopers dropped to the right spot, but the enemy had already retreated.
16. Do you want a pack of two-pice cigarettes?
17. It hurts, but I don't think I'm bleeding.
18. If you go get your own tools, that'll be O.K.
19. Do you see the fellow who's standing right in the middle?
20. They walk about, keeping silent (all the time).
21. There's a fee of two annas on it.
22. The batallion made an attack, but didn't succeed.
23. Hey, soldier! Can you show me the storehouse on the map?
24. It takes practice to catch the ball while [you are] running.
25. I think he was hit by accident.
26. How many times did that man call?
27. Those envelopes are four inches wide and six inches long.
28. I didn't weigh it, but I don't think it weighs more than an ordinary letter.
29. He's in the morgue, poor fellow. They're just waiting to (*kee . . .*) bury him.
30. I've got no sympathy with gamblers who get into trouble.
31. The cemetery is easy to reach by train.
32. The water disappears from the well right while you're looking.
33. It will be hard to dig a well that's deeper than the one behind the house.
34. If you dig deeper than 10 feet, the ground becomes hard as stone.
35. He had already broken his leg. Now he got burned in the face.
36. The nearest bridge is of wood and ('one which') isn't safe.
37. Don't ever try your luck with ('of') the cards.
38. If we lie down (lying down) on the ground, we'll be safe from bullets.
39. He stuck the pole into the ground and run away.
40. To get to the air field, do I have to drive through ('across') the village over there, or can I by-pass it?



Digitized by Google

## SECTION C—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Group Leader on the sentences in *Section B*, asking various members of the group: "*. . . -koo hindustaanii-mẽẽ kiaa kahᵉtee hãĩ*".

## SECTION D—HOW WOULD YOU SAY IT?

1. Practice the Hindustani for the following sentences. This is individual study.

1. Put up the two poles at a distance of three feet.
2. He doesn't know how to spell his name.
3. He didn't ever tell anybody where he was going.
4. He wasn't where he'd said he would (subjunctive) be.
5. If there had been a telephone [call] between twenty minutes to five and five minutes to six, I would know it.
6. Don't forget to bring flowers.
7. They had no time to bury their dead.
8. Different people like different things.
9. It's dangerous to cross the river in a small boat.
10. A few days ago, a young fellow tried to swim to the other bank; he was almost drowned in the middle.
11. If you'll explain that to me, I might understand.
12. It takes intelligence and luck to get a job ('rank') like that.
13. Each one went back to his country.
14. They had already been fined once for dishonest gambling.
15. Everybody works in a different department.
16. Our sergeant died fighting.
17. She might become (*xatraa*) deaf.
18. Even though they were almost starving, they wouldn't retreat an inch.
19. He's planning to make a speech tomorrow.
20. It isn't easy to make a speech like that so as to ('which should') please everybody.
21. To make a speech, he would have to travel 400 miles.
22. Some of our enemies have already been defeated.
23. Go to the door through ('from') which you came in, and close it.



Digitized by Google

25. No army has ever won a victory by retreating all the time.
26. It says ('has been written') in the paper that the army engineer batallion has built new bridges for a crossing of the river.
27. There are two roads, one for each direction.
28. If they're not going to come out voluntarily, you'll have to shoot.
29. A couple of sailors are whiling away the time, telling each other stories.
30. Two hours went by before they were found and brought to safety ('saved').

2. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences:

1. *tiin čhaTāāk------ mahᵉsuul kitnaa hai.*
2. *iee daaḷ------ nikaaln------ aasaan nahĩĩ.*
3. *iee too aurat------ loog-------kaa kaam hai.*
4. *hãs------ hãs------ khaRaa huuaa.*
5. *paanii pii------ čal rahaa thaa.*
6. *doo baras------- jeel-mẽẽ band hai.*
7. *doo baras------- jeel-mẽẽ band hoo-gaa.*
8. *sab din palang-par leeT------ ------.*
9. *laRkõõ-nee jis kursii-par mãĩ baiTh------uaalaa thaa, uoo duusrii jagaa rakh dii.*
10. *taaš kheeln------ ḳismatuaal------ hoonaa čaahiiee.*

## SECTION E—HOW DID YOU SAY IT?

Quiz by the Group Leader on the sentences in *Section D*, asking various members of the group: ". . . *-koo hindustaanii-mẽẽ kiaa kahᵉtee hãĩ*".



Digitized by Google

## SECTION F—CONVERSATION

Here are some suggested topics:

1. a. Your telephone is out of order. You try to interest the operator (*tailiifuunuaalii laʀkii*) in your problem, describing just what is wrong. She asks when you'll be at home to let the man in, etc.

   b. You give your servant instructions regarding a number of things to be taken care of at the post office, buying stamps, mailing letters, inquiring about a package which didn't arrive, etc.

   c. You are an insurance man. A building accident has killed or wounded a number of workers. You are supposed to investigate the case, and listen to the claims of the victims and their relatives.

   d. You are an engineer connected with a road construction project. There is a river to be bridged in a hurry. You are told that there is an old laborer around who knows something about a similar attempt a long time ago. Draw him a map, showing all kinds of features (streams, lakes, roads, hills, etc.) and try to find out just what was tried and why the plan was abandoned.

   e. Describe the jhundee-moondee game.

   f. Describe the chief military events in the course of the Second World War (For the geographic names, see the *Appendix*).

2. Make up problems in arithmetic, involving addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division (using *hissaa*).



Digitized by Google

# APPENDIX

## A. GLOSSARY

This is a complete list of all the words which have been used in the course. It is organized like the *Finder Lists* in the preceding units, except that it is more explicit in some respects. It lists everything you want to know in order to use the word correctly in a construction or sentence. If a word has a special meaning in special phrases (such as, for instance, *lagnaa* in *doo minaT lagtee hãĩ* 'it takes two minutes'), you will find the entire phrase under the word in question.

Nouns are masculine unless marked "(*-ii*)". The symbol "(=)" after a word ending in *-aa* indicates that the *-aa* is never changed to *-ee* (or *-õõ*). "(N)" and "(T)" after verbs mean, of course, "neuter" and "transitive". Such notations as "*-ee liiee*", "*-ii baabat*" refer to the masculine or feminine oblique form (mostly, of course, *-kee* and *-kii* respectively) which precede *liiee* and *baabat*. This holds good, too, for such phrases as "*-ii daauat karnaa*" which simply tells you to say *meerii* or *meh$^{e}$maanõõ-kii daauat karnaa* 'to invite me' or 'to invite guests,' using *daauat* as a feminine noun. Where there is no such indication, phrases with *karnaa* (T) and *hoonaa* (N) are adjective phrases (see Unit 13): *daaxil hoonaa*, etc.

Not listed in the *Glossary* are compound verbs with *deenaa* (transitive) and *jaanaa* (neuter) following verb stems (see Unit 22), unless their meaning is different from that of the simple verb.

*aab-o-hauaa* (*-ii*) climate
*aabaad* situated
*aabaadii* (*-ii*) population
*aabaab arz* how do you do
*aadat* (*-ii*) habit
*aadhaa* half
*aadmii* man
*aag* (*-ii*) fire
*aagee* forward, ahead (*aagee baʀhnaa* (N) 'to advance'; *-ee aagee* 'ahead of')
*aahestaa* slowly
*aaj* today (*aaj kal* 'these days, nowadays')
*ããkh* (*-ii*) eye
*aam taur-par* usually
*aanaa* (N) to come (*aaoo čalẽẽ* 'let's go!; *aanaa jaanaa* 'to go back and forth; traffic'; *lee aanaa* (N) 'to bring'; *mooč aaii* '(I) sprained (my ankle)'; *un-koo us-see mazaa aataa hai* 'they have fun with it')
*aanaa* anna (about 2 cents)



Digitized by Google

*aap* you
*aapas-mẽẽ* among themselves
*aaraam* rest (*aaraam karnaa* 'to rest')
*aarii* (*-ii*) saw
*aasaan* easy
*aasaanii* (*-ii*) ease (*aasaanii-see* 'easily')
*aasmaan* sky
*aastiin* (*-ii*) sleeve
*aaTh* eight
*aazmaanaa* (T) to try (*kismat aazmaanaa* 'to try one's luck')
*ab* now
*abhii* now (*abhii-tak* 'even now, still')
*aččhaa* good, well
*afsar* officer, official
*afsoos* sorrow (*mujh-koo afsoos hai* 'that's too bad')
*agar* if
*agast* August
*ai* you!
*ainak* (*-ii*) spectacles, glasses
*aisaa* such (as this) (*aisee* 'thus')
*ajnabii* stranger
*akeelaa* alone
*aksar* often
*aktuubar* October
*-ee alaauaa* aside from
*alag* separate, independent
*amiir* rich, distinguished
*amriikaa* (=) America
*amriikan* American
*anaar* pomegranate
*-ee andar* inside
*andhaa* blind
*andheeraa* darkness
*angreez* Englishman; the British
*angreezii* English, British
*apnaa* my, your, his, her, its, one's, our, your, their own (with reference to the agent)
*aprail* April
*arsaTh* sixty-eight
*aRhaaii* two and a half
*aRtaaliis* forty-eight
*aRtiis* thirty-eight
*aslii* real
*aspataal* hospital
*assii* eighty
*aTHaais* twenty-eight
*aTHaanuee* ninety-eight
*aTHaaraa* (=) eighteen
*aTHaasii* eighty-eight
*aTHaauan* fifty-eight
*aTHattar* seventy-eight
*aur* and; else
*aurat* (*-ii*) woman
*auzaar* (masc. pl.) tools
*axbaar* newspaper
*axiir* end (*axiir-mẽẽ* 'finally')
*axtiaar* right, privilege

*-ii baabat* about
*baabuu* employee (*TikiT baabuu* 'ticket seller')
*-ee baad* after
*baadal* cloud
*bããdhnaa* (T) to bind, tie, wrap
*baadšaah* king
*baaeskoop* movie
*baag* garden
*bããh* (*-ii*) arm
*baahar* outside (*-ee baahar* 'outside something')
*baaiãã* left (side)
*baais* twenty-two
*baal* hair
*baal-bačče* members of the family
*baaluu* (*-ii*) sand
*baanuee* ninety-two
*baap* father
*baaraa* (=) twelve



Digitized by Google

*baariš* (*-ii*) rain (*baariš hoo rahii hai* 'it's raining')
*baaruud* see *goolaa*
*baaRh* (*-ii*) flood
*baasaTh* sixty-two
*baat* (*-ii*) matter, word (*baat karnaa* 'to mention, talk'; *kuch baat nahīī* 'it doesn't matter'.)
*baatčiit* (*-ii*) conversation (*baatčiit karnaa* 'to talk')
*baauan* fifty-two
*baauarčiixaanaa* kitchen
*baazuu* flank, side (*-ee baazuu* 'to the side of, next to')
*bačaanaa* (T) to save, rescue
*baččaa* child
*bačnaa* (N) to save oneself, to be saved (*Duubtee Duubtee bačaa* 'he escaped drowning')
*badan* body
*badlii deenaa* to give in exchange (*badlii leenaa* 'to take in exchange')
*badmaaš* bad, wicked
*-ee bagair* or *bagair . . . -ee* without
*bahaadur* gallant, heroic
*bahattar* seventy-two
*bah$^{e}$naa* (N) to stream, run
*bah$^{e}$raa* deaf
*bahot* much, many, very
*bahen* (*-ii*) sister
*baiaaliis* forty-two
*baiaasii* eighty-two
*baikunTh* paradise
*bail* ox
*bairang* to be paid by addressee
*baiThnaa* (N) get into a sitting position; sit down (*baiThaa hoonaa* 'to be sitting')
*-ee bajaaee* instead of
*bajaanaa* (T) to strike, to play (an instrument)
*bajee* . . . o'clock
*bajnaa* (N) to ring, sound (*pāāč baj-kar das minaT-mēē* 'at ten past five; *čhai bajnee-mēē biis minaT* 'twenty to six')
*bakas* suitcase
*balkee* rather
*ballaa* bat
*bambaii* (*-ii*) Bombay
*banaanaa* (T) to make, fix
*banaaras* Benares
*band hoonaa* to be closed, be finished (*band karnaa* to close, shut, finish something)
*bandar* monkey
*bandar-gaah* port, harbor
*banduuk* (*-ii*) rifle, shotgun
*banDal* package
*baniiāā* local merchant, banker; miser
*bannaa* (N) to be made
*banuaanaa* (T) to have something made
*baraabar* equal (*-ee baraabar* 'equal to')
*baraf* (*-ii*) snow, ice
*baras* year
*barbaad karnaa* to ruin, destroy
*bardaašt hoonaa* to be bearable (*bardaašt kar saknaa* 'to bear, be able to stand something')
*barmaa* (sometimes =) Burma
*barsaatii* (*-ii*) raincoat
*baRaa* big, elder, important
*baRhaii* carpenter
*baRhnaa* (N) (*aagee baRhnaa*) to advance
*bas* (*-ii*) bus
*bataanaa* (T) to tell
*battii* (*-ii*) wick



Digitized by Google

*battiis* thirty-two
*bazaar* market
*beečnaa* (T) to sell
*beehooš* unconscious
*beeiimaan* dishonest
*beeoḳuuf* suitcase
*beepaʀhaa* illiterate
*beešak* doubtless
*beeʈaa* son
*beeʈii* (*-ii*) daughter
*beopaar* business
*bhaagnaa* (N) to run
*bhaaii* brother
*bhaarii* heavy
*bharnaa* (T) to fill something
*bhartii karnaa* to enlist someone
*bhatiijaa* brother's son
*bheejnaa* (T) to send
*bhii* also, too; (with *nahĩĩ:* 'either') (*eek ḳadam bhii na-haʈtee* 'they don't retreat so much as one step'; *na-deekh saknee-par bhii* 'although he can't see')
*bhuulnaa* (N) forget
*bičaaraa* poor, to be pitied
*biič* middle
*biimaar* ill, sick
*biimaarii* (*-ii*) illness

*biis* twenty
*biisii* (*-ii*) unit of twenty
*biisiiõõ* scores of . . .
*biiuii* (*-ii*) wife
*bijlii* (*-ii*) lightning, electricity (*bijlii-kii battii* 'the electric light')
*biknaa* (N) to be sold, be for sale
*bilkul* entirely
*boolnaa* (N and T) to speak
*braun* brown
*budh* (*-ii*) Wednesday
*bulaanaa* (T) to call
*buuʀhaa* old (of people)
*buxaar* fever (*jaaʀee-kaa buxaar* 'malaria'; *buxaar aataa hai* '(I) get a fever')

*čããd* moon
*čaaee* (*-ii*) tea
*čaahᵉnaa* (T) to want
*čaahiiee* it is necessary (*un-koo baiʈhnaa čaahiie* 'they've got to sit down')
*čaalis* forty
*čaar* four
*čaaual* rice
*čaauan* fifty-four
*čaččaa* (=) father's brother

*čakkar* circle
*čalaanaa* (T) to make go, drive; to shoot
*čalaaneeuaalaa* driver
*čalnaa* (N) to go, to move (*čalaa jaanaa* 'to be gone')
*čamčaa* spoon
*čapraas* (*-ii*) belt
*čauaaliis* forty-four
*čaubiis* twenty-four
*čaudaa* (=) fourteen
*čauhattar* seventy-four
*čauraanuee* ninety-four
*čauraasii* eighty-four
*čauʀaa* wide
*čauʀaaii* (*-ii*) width
*čãũtiis* thirty-four
*čausaʈh* sixty-six
*čauthaa* fourth
*čehᵉraa* face
*ček* check
*čhããčhaʈh* sixty-six
*čhabbis* twenty-six
*čhai* six
*čhaiaaliis* forty-six
*čhaiaanuee* ninety-six
*čhapnaa* (N) to be printed
*čhappan* fifty-six



Digitized by Google

*čhat* (*-ii*) roof
*čhatrii* (*-ii*) umbrella, parachute
*čhatriiuaalaa sipaahii* parachutist (*čhatriiuaalii fauj* 'paratrooper units')
*čhatliis* thirty-six
*čhaTaa* sixth
*čhaTāāk* (*-ii*) a chatank (about 2 ounces)
*čhaTuãã* sixth
*čheed* hole
*čhiattar* seventy-six
*čhipaanaa* (T) to hide something
*čhooRnaa* (T) to leave
*čhooTaa* small, younger
*čhurii* (*-ii*) knife
*čhuTTii* (*-ii*) vacation, leave
*čhuunaa* (T) to touch
*čhuuTnaa* (N) to get away, leave
*čiiz* (*-ii*) thing
*čiTThii* (*-ii*) letter
*čoorii* (*-ii*) theft (*iee paisaa čoorii-kaa hai* 'this is stolen money')
*čooT* (*-ii*) injury
*čukaa* (N, past tense) he had . . . already (*pakaR čukaa* 'he had already caught them')
*čup* quiet (*čup rahᵉnaa* 'to keep quiet')
*čuraanaa* (T) to steal
*čuunaa* lime

*daag* stain
*daam* price
*daaõõ* stake, bet (*daaõõ lagaanaa* 'to put up a bet')
*daarooġaa* (=) police inspector
*dããt* tooth
*daauat* (*-ii*) invitation (*-ii daauat karnaa* 'to invite')
*daaxil hoonaa* to enter
*dafaa* (*-ii*) time (= occurrence, turn)
*dafan hoonaa* to be buried (*dafan karnaa* 'to bury')
*daftar* office
*daġaabaazii* (*-ii*) trickery
*dahᵉnaa* right (side)
*dakkhin* south
*dam* breath (*eek dam* 'at once, altogether')
*dar-haḳiiḳat* really
*daraxt* tree
*darbaan* watchman
*dard* pain (*dard karnaa* 'to hurt')
*darjaa* class, grade, story of a house
*darjan* dozen
*darmiiaan* interval
*daruaazaa* door
*darzii* tailor
*das* ten
*dastuur* custom
*dauaaii* (*-ii*) medicine
*deekhnaa* (T) to look, see
*deenaa* (T) to give (*inaam deenaa* 'to award'; *udhaar deenaa* 'to lend')
*decotaa* a god
*deer* (*-ii*) delay (*thooRii deer* 'a little late'; *gaaRii-koo deer hai* 'the train is late')
*dhaar* (*-ii*) current, stream
*dhaat* (*-ii*) metal
*dhiiree* slowly
*dhoobii* laundryman
*dhookaa* trick (*dhookaa deenaa* 'to play a trick')
*dhoonaa* (T) to wash
*dhuup* sunshine
*dikhaanaa* (T) to show
*dikhnaa* to seem, to appear, to be visible



Digitized by Google

*dil* heart, mind, soul
*dilčasp* interesting
*dilčaspii* (*-ii*) interest (*mujh-koo us-see dilčaspii hai* I'm interested in it')
*dimaag* brain
*din* day, time
*disambar* December
*diuaar* (*-ii*) wall
*doo* two (*doo paher* 'afternoon')
*doonõõ* both
*doost* friend
*doostii* (*-ii*) friendship
*dukaan* (*-ii*) shop
*dukaanuaalaa* salesclerk
*dukandaar* shopkeeper
*duniaãã* (*-ii*) world
*dušman* enemy
*duudh* milk
*duur* far (*kitnii duur* 'how far')
*duusraa* second, other, next (*eek duusree-koo*, *-see* etc. 'one another, each other')

*Daak* (*-ii*) mail
*DaakTar* doctor
*Daakxaanaa* post office
*Daal* (*-ii*) branch
*Daalar* dollar
*Daalnaa* (T) to throw, pour, drop (*maar Daalnaa* 'to kill')
*Dar* fear, danger
*Darnaa* (N) to be afraid (*-see* 'of something')
*DeeRh* one and a half
*DipTii* deputy judge
*Duubnaa* (N) to be drowned, sink

*eek* one (*har eek* 'every one'; *eek eek* 'one by one; each single one')
*etkaad* belief

*faaedaa* profit, result
*faakaa* starvation (*faakaa karnaa* 'to suffer starvation, starve')
*faaslaa* distance
*faeslaa* decision (*-aa faeslaa karnaa* 'to decide')
*farak* difference (*mandir aur masjid-mẽẽ kiaa farak hai* 'what's the difference between a temple and a mosque?')
*far(a)š* floor, carpet
*faruarii* (*-ii*) February
*farz* duty
*fatee* (*-ii*) victory, defeat (*dušman-par hamaarii fatee huii* 'we won a victory over the enemy; we defeated the enemy')
*fauj* (*-ii*) army
*fauran* right away
*fii-sadii* percent
*fuT* foot, feet (measure)
*fuzuul* idle, useless

*gaaee* (*-ii*) cow
*gaahak* customer
*gaanaa* (T) to sing (*gaanaa bajaanaa* 'singing and playing, music')
*gaaõõ* country, village
*gaaraa* mortar
*gaaRii* (*-ii*) train
*gaaRnaa* (T) to stick something in
*gahᵉraa* deep
*gangaa* (*-ii*) Ganges
*garam* warm
*garmii* (*-ii*) heat, summer
*gaz* yard
*gẽẽd* ball, sphere
*geehũũ* wheat
*ghanTaa* hour
*ghar* house
*gheernaa* (T) to surround, encircle



Digitized by Google

*ghooRaa* horse
*giaaraa* (=) eleven
*giilaa* wet
*giraanaa* (T) to drop something
*giraftaar karnaa* to arrest
*girjaa* church
*girnaa* (N) to fall, to empty (river) (*paanii gir rahaa hai* 'it's raining')
*goolaa* ball, bullet (*goolaa-baaruud* 'gun powder')
*goolii* (*-ii*) small bullet, pill
*goorkhaa* Gurkha (Nepalese soldier)
*goošt* meat
*gudaam* storehouse
*-gunaa* -fold (*čaar-gunaa* 'four-fold, four times over')
*guzaarnaa* (T) to make go by, pass something
*guzarnaa* (N) to go by, pass
*guzraa* past

*ġaaeb hoonaa* to vanish, disappear
*ġalat* wrong
*ġallaa* grain
*ġaltii* (*-ii*) mistake, error
*ġariib* poor
*ġarzaa* debt

*hãã* yes
*haalat* (*-ii*) condition
*haarnaa* (N) to lose, be defeated
*haath* hand, arm
*haathaa-paaii* (*-ii*) punching and kicking
*had* (*-ii*) boundary
*haDDii* (*-ii*) bone
*haftaa* week
*hajjaam* barber
*hakiim* doctor
*halkaa* light (= not heavy)
*hamlaa* attack
*har* each, every (*har eek* 'every one')
*har(a)j* bad thing
*ham* we, us, I (*ham-loog* 'we')
*hamaaraa* our, my, ours, mine
*hamdardii* (*-ii*) sympathy
*hameešaa* (=) always
*hãsnaa* (N) to laugh
*hathiaar* weapon
*haTnaa* (N) to retreat
*hauaa* (*-ii*) wind
*hauaaii* pertaining to air (*hauaaii jahaaz* 'airplane')
*haualdaar* corporal
*hazaar* thousand
*hazaarõõ* thousands of . . .
*hii* just, exactly (*eek-hii* 'one and the same')
*hijjee* (*-ii*) spelling
*hilaanaa* (T) to shake something
*himaaliiaa* Himalaya
*hindustaan* India
*hindustaanii* Indian, "Hindu", Hindustani
*hinduu* Hindu (religion)
*hisaab* account
*hissaa* part
*hooTal* hotel
*hoonaa* (N) to be, to become, to be getting, to happen
*hukum* order, command
*hukuumat* (*-ii*) rule, sovereignty
*hušiaar* attentive, clever, careful
*hušiaarii* (*-ii*) care, attention, intelligence (*hušiaarii-see* 'carefully')

*iaa* or
*iaad rakhnaa* to keep in mind
*iahãã* (=) here (*-ee iahãã* 'at . . .'s home')
*iaķiin* belief
*ibaadat* (*-ii*) worship



Digitized by Google

*idhar* here, in this direction
*iee* this, these, he, she, it, they
*iehii* the same
*iimandaar* honest
*iiT* (*-ii*) brick
*ijaazat* (*-ii*) permission (*-ii ijaazat deenaa* 'to permit')
*ikaais* twenty-one
*ikhattar* seventy-one
*ikkiaanuee* ninety-one
*ikkiaauan* fifty-one
*ikkiaasii* eighty-one
*iksaTh* sixty-one
*iktaaliis* forty-one
*iktiis* thirty-one
*ilaahaabaad* Allahabad
*imaarat* (*-ii*) building
*inaam deenaa* to award
*inglistaan* England
*intezaam* management (*intezaam karnaa* or *-aa intezaam karnaa* 'to manage')
*-aa intezaar karnaa* to wait for
*iraadaa* intention, plan (*-aa iraadaa karnaa* 'to plan')
*isaaii* Christian
*iskuul* school
*istemaal karnaa* to use
*istrii* (*-ii*) flatiron (*istrii karnaa* 'to press')
*isTeešan* station
*itnaa* as much as this (*itnaa baRaa* 'this big')
*ittefaaḳ* accident (*ittefaaḳ-see* 'by chance, accidentally')
*ituaar* Sunday
*iTlii* (*-ii*) Italy
*izzat* (*-ii*) honor

*jaal* net
*jaanaa* (N) to go (*lee jaanaa* (N) 'to take somewhere'; *zabaan boolii jaatii hai* 'the language is spoken'; *zang jaataa hai* 'something gets rusty')
*jaannaa* (N and T) to know
*jaapaanii* Japanese
*jaanuar* animal
*jaaRaa* frost, shiver (*jaaRee-kaa buxaar* 'malaria')
*jab* (at the time) when
*jagaa* (*-ii*) place, spot (*-ii jagaa* 'instead of')
*jahaaz* ship (*hauaaii jahaaz* 'airplane')
*jalaanaa* (T) to light, burn something
*jaldii* early, quickly
*jalnaa* (N) to be burning, to burn
*jalsaa* meeting, event
*jamaa* (=) *karnaa* to collect, save
*jamaadaar* sergeant
*janaab* (a form of address); Sir!
*januarii* (*-ii*) January
*jang* war
*jauaab* answer
*jauaan* young, young man
*jeeb* (*-ii*) pocket
*jeel* prison
*jhanDii* (*-ii*) pole, post
*jhanDii-munDii* (*-ii*) jhundee-moondee (a game)
*jhiil* (*-ii*) lake
*jhuuT* falsehood, lie
*jild* (*-ii*) skin
*jii hãã* yes
*jii nahĩĩ* no
*jahaaz* ship
*jahaazii* sailor
*jiitnaa* (N) to win, defeat
*joo* who, which, that (relative pronoun)



Digitized by Google

*juuaa* game (dice, cards, etc.), gambling
*juun* June
*juutaa* shoe, pair of shoes

*-kaa* of, belonging to (*un-kaa* 'their(s); *baadšaah-kaa banuaaiaa huuaa ḳilaa* 'a fort which the king had ordered built')
*kaafii* enough, sufficient
*kaaġaz* paper
*kaalij* college
*kaam* work
*kaamiaab* successful
*kaamiaabii* (*-ii*) success
*kaan* ear
*kaariigar* machanic
*kaarxaanaa* factory
*kããTaa* fork
*kaaTnaa* (T) to cut
*kab* when (*kab-see*, *kab-tak* 'how long')
*kabhii* ever (*kabhii kabhii* 'sometimes'; *kabhii nahĩĩ* 'never')
*kačča* raw
*kahãã* (=) where
*kahaanii* (*-ii*) story
*kahᵉnaa* (T) to say
*kahĩĩ* somewhere, anywhere (*sab kahĩĩ* 'everywhere')
*kaisaa* of what kind (*kaisee* 'how')
*kal* tomorrow, yesterday
*kalkattaa* Calcutta
*kam* less, fewer
*kamraa* room
*kamzoor* weak
*kapRee* clothes
*-kar* after having . . .
*karããčii* Karachi
*karaanaa* (T) to have something done
*karnaa* (T) to do (*jaaiaa kartaa thaa* 'he was used to going')
*karooR* ten million
*kaRuaa* bitter
*kaTaanaa* (T) to have cut
*kaun* who, which (*kaun-saa* 'just who, which')
*kee* that
*khaanaa* food; (T) to eat (*khaaneekii dukaan* (*-ii*) 'restaurant'; *Takkar khaanaa* 'to collide')
*khaRaa hoonaa* to be standing, stand
*kheel* game
*kheelnaa* (N and T) to play
*kheet* field, farm
*kheetii* (*-ii*) agriculture, farming
*khĩĩčnaa* (T) to draw, pull
*khilaaRii* gambler, player
*khiRkii* (*-ii*) window
*khoo jaanaa* to get lost
*khoodnaa* (T) to dig
*khulaa* open
*khulnaa* (N) to be opened
*kiaa* what
*kidhar* where to, whither
*kiil* (*-ii*) nail
*kilaas* class
*kinaaraa* bank, shore
*kiõõ* why
*kiõõ-kee* because
*kiraaiaa* rent (*kiraaee-mẽẽ milnaa* 'to rent')
*kisaan* farmer
*kitaab* (*-ii*) book
*kitnaa* how much? (*kitnaa baRaa* 'how big?')
*kohᵉraa* fog
*-koo* to (*-koo* also marks the direct object)
*kooii* any, some, anybody, somebody (*kooii nahĩĩ* 'no, nobody')
*koos* kos (about 2 miles)



Digitized by Google

*-ii koošiš karnaa* to try
*kooT* coat
*kuč* any, some, anything, something (*kuč nahĩĩ* 'no, nothing')
*kukrii* (*-ii*) battle knife
*kulhaaRii* (*-ii*) axe
*kunjii* (*-ii*) key
*kursii* (*-ii*) chair
*kuuãã* the well
*kuuč* (*-ii*) departure, marching off

*ḳaanuun* law, regulation (*lambaaii čauRaaii-kaa ḳaanuun* 'regulations concerning the format')
*ḳabrustaan* cemetery
*ḳabzaa* occupation
*ḳadam* step
*ḳadar* (to such an) extent
*ḳaee karnaa* to vomit
*ḳahet* famine
*ḳaidii* prisoner
*ḳalam* (masc. or *-ii*) pen
*ḳamiiz* (*-ii*) shirt
*ḳariib* close (*-ee ḳariib* 'close to')
*ḳauaaed* (*-ii*) drill, exercise
*ḳaumii* national
*ḳiimat* (*-ii*) price (*is ḳiimat-mẽẽ* 'at this price')
*ḳiimtii* valuable, precious
*ḳilaa* fort
*ḳisim* sort, kind (*kis ḳisim-kee phal* 'what kind of fruit')
*ḳismat* (*-ii*) luck
*ḳismatuaalaa* lucky
*ḳissaa* story
*ḳurbaanii* (*-ii*) sacrifice
*ḳusuur* guilt

*laakh* one hundred thousand
*laanaa* (N) to bring
*lafz* word
*lagaanaa* (T) to apply, use (*daaõõ lagaanaa* 'to put up bets')
*lagnaa* (N) to be used, applied (. . . *lagtaa hai* 'it takes . . .'; *aččhaa lagee-gaa* 'it'll look good, go well'; *goolii lagnee-see* 'because a bullet hit him'; *khaanee lagaa* 'he sat down and ate'; *nišaanaa lagtaa hai* 'aim is taken')
*lain* (*-ii*) line
*lakRii* (*-ii*) wood, stick
*lambaa* long
*lambaaii* (*-ii*) length
*laRaaii* (*-ii*) war, battle
*laRnaa* (N) to fight
*laškar* army
*laTkaanaa* (T) to hang something
*laRkaa* boy
*laRkii* (*-ii*) girl
*leekin* but
*leenaa* (T) to take (*lee aanaa* (N) 'to bring'; *lee jaanaa* (N) 'to take somewhere'; *udhaar leenaa* 'to borrow')
*leeTnaa* (N) to lie down (*leeTaa hoonaa* 'to be lying down')
*lifT* (*-ii*) elevator
*-ee liiee* for (*is liiee* 'therefore, and so' *nahaanee-kee liiee* '(in order to take a bath')
*likhnaa* (T) to write
*loog* (masc. plur.) people
*looknaa* (T) to catch, be hit

*mãã* (*-ii*) mother
*mãã-baap* parents
*maaf hoonaa* to be forgiven (*maaf karnaa* 'to excuse')
*maafii* (*-ii*) forgiveness
*mããgnaa* (T) to beg
*maal* goods
*maalgaaRii* (*-ii*) freight train



Digitized by Google

*maalik* proprietor, boss
*maaluum hoonaa* to seem, to be known (*maaluum nahīī* '(I) don't know'; *maaluum karnaa* 'to make sure')
*maamulii* ordinary, usual
*maannaa* (T) to obey, heed (*šikast maannaa* 'to suffer defeat, lose')
*maarč* March
*maarnaa* (T) to beat, strike, hit (*maar ɒaalnaa* 'to kill')
*maartaul* hammer
*mačhlii* (*-ii*) fish
*madad* (*-ii*) help, assistance (*-ii madad karnaa* 'to help, assist')
*magar* crocodile
*mahaaoraa* practice
*mahᵉfuuz* safe
*mãhᵉgaa* expensive
*mahel* palace
*mahᵉsuul* fee, tax
*mahiinaa* month
*mahobbat* (*-ii*) love (*us-koo mahobbat karnaa* 'to love him, her')
*mahokmaa* department
*mahollaa* neighborhood
*mãī* I, myself
*maidaan* plain, valley, field
*maii* (*-ii*) May
*mailaa* dirty
*makaaii* (*-ii*) corn
*makkhan* butter
*man* mun (about 80 pounds)
*manaanaa* (T) to celebrate, observe (a festival)
*manaahii* (*-ii*) prohibition, ban
*mandir* temple
*mangal* Tuesday
*-ii marammat karnaa* to mend, fix (*-ii marammat karaanaa* 'to have fixed')
*mard* male, man
*marnaa* (N) to die
*masjid* (*-ii*) mosque
*masruuf* busy
*mašhuur* famous
*mat-* don't . . .!
*matlab* meaning (*meeraa matlab iee hai, kee* . . . 'What I mean is: . . .')
*maujuud* present, at hand
*mauḳaa* chance, opportunity
*mausam* weather, climate
*mazaa* taste, fun (*un-koo us-see mazaa aataa hai* 'they have fun with it'; *mazaa karnaa* 'to have a good time, enjoy oneself')
*mazbuut* strong
*mazduur* worker
*mazeedaar* tasty, interesting
*-mēē* in, on, among (*is ḳiimat-mēē* 'at this price'; *-mēē-see* 'out of')
*meeraa* my, mine
*meeuaa* nut
*meez* (*-ii*) table
*mehᵉmaan* guest
*meherbaanii* (*-ii*) kindness, mercy; thank you (*xudaa-kii meherbaanii*) 'thank God'; *meherbaanii-seę* 'please')
*miiᵀhaa* sweet
*milkiiat* (*-ii*) landed property
*milnaa* (N) to meet, be available (*mujh-koo kuch miltaa hai* 'I get something')
*minaᵀ* minute
*miᵀhaaii* (*-ii*) candy
*mooč* (*-ii*) sprain (*mujh-koo mooč aatii hai* 'I've got a sprain')
*moorčaa* battle line
*mooᵀar* (*-ii*) automobile, bus
*moozaa* sock, stocking
*muḳadmaa* trial
*mulaaḳaat* (*-ii*) visit (*-ii* (or: *-see*) *mulaaḳaat karnaa* 'to visit')



Digitized by Google

*mulk* country
*mulkii* political, belonging to the country (*mulkii-xairxuaah* 'patriotic')
*mumkin* possible
*munšii* clerk
*murdaa* dead man, corpse
*musalmaan* Moslem, Mohammedan
*musiibat* (*-ii*) misfortune, trouble
*muškil* difficult
*-ee mutaabiḳ* according to
*muTThii* (*-ii*) fist
*mũũ* mouth
*muurat* (*-ii*) statue
*muxtalif* different
*muxtasir* brief (*muxtasir taur-par* 'briefly')

*na-* not
*naadaan* foolish, ignorant
*naak* (*-ii*) nose
*naalaa* stream
*naam* name
*naaoo* (*-ii*) (river) boat
*naaraaz* angry, annoyed
*naaTak* theater
*nabbee* ninety
*nadii* (*-ii*) the river
*nahaanaa* (N) to bathe
*nahĩĩ* not; is not, am not, are not (*nahĩĩ too* 'otherwise')
*naiaa* new
*naḳd paisaa* cash
*naklii* fake, phoney
*naḳšaa* map
*namaaz* Mohammedan prayer (*namaaz paRhnaa* 'to pray (Mohammedan)')
*namak* salt
*nambar* number
*narangii* (*-ii*) orange
*nars* (*-ii*) nurse
*nau* nine
*nauaab* Moslem prince
*nauaasii* eighty-nine
*nauambar* November
*naukar* servant
*nazdiik* near (*-ee nazdiik* 'near . . .')
*-nee* by
*niičee* below, downstairs (*-ee niičee* 'underneath')
*nikaalnaa* (T) to take out
*nikalnaa* (N) to come out
*niniiaanuee* ninety-nine
*nišaanaa* target (*nišaana lagtaa hai* 'aim is taken')
*nooT* bill
*nuḳsaan* damage, harm
*nuuiaark* New York

*oh°daa* rank, office

*pããč* five
*paaetaxt* capital city
*paagal* crazy
*paanaa* (T) to find
*paanii* water (*paanii gir rahaa hai* 'it's raining')
*paaoo* quarter
*paar karnaa* to cross
*paarii* (*-ii*) turn (*eek eek apnii apnii paarii-see* 'each one in turn')
*paarTii* (*-ii*) party, team
*-ee paas* in somebody's hands (*meeree paas . . . hai* 'I've got . . .')
*pããsaa* die, game of dice
*pahaaR* mountain
*pah°laa* the first (*pah°lee* 'first, at first, before')
*pahennaa* (T) to wear, put on
*paher* see *doo paher*



Digitized by Google

*pahõčnaa* to arrive
*paidaa* (=) *hoonaa* to grow, be raised (*paidaa karnaa* 'to grow, raise, create')
*paidaauaarii* (*-ii*) harvest
*paidal* on foot (*paidal jaanaa* 'to walk')
*pair* foot
*pãīsaTh* sixty-five
*pãītaaliis* forty-five
*pãītiis* thirty-five
*paisaa* money
*paisee* pice (coins)
*pakaanaa* (T) to cook something
*pakaRnaa* (T) to catch
*palang* bed
*palTan* (*-ii*) batallion
*pandraa* (=) fifteen
*-par* on, upon (*pahaaR-par* 'in the mountains; *na-deekh saknee-par bhii* 'although he can't see'; *ghar-par* 'at home')
*paRaa* lying down
*paRaaoo* camp, encampment
*paRhaa* literate
*paRhaanaa* (T) to teach
*paRhnaa* (T) to study, read (*namaaz paRhnaa* 'to pray')
*paRnaa* (N) to fall, befall, fall to one's lot (*-koo . . . paRee-gaa* 'one will have to . . .')
*pasand hoonaa* to be liked (*pasand karnaa* 'to like')
*pataa* address
*patlaa* thin
*patluun* (*-ii*) pants
*pattaa* leaf
*patthar* stone
*paTTii* (*-ii*) puttee
*paunee* a quarter to (the hour), minus a quarter
*peeR* tree
*peešaa* trade, profession
*peeT* stomach
*phaaRnaa* (T) to tear something
*phal* fruit
*phaTaa* torn, worn out
*phaTnaa* (N) to get torn
*phẽẽknaa* (T) to throw, toss
*pheepRaa* lungs
*phir* again, but (*aur phir?* 'and then?')
*phuul* flower
*piaalaa* cup
*piaasaa* thirsty
*piičhee* behind, in the rear (*-ee piičhee* 'behind something')
*piinaa* (T) to drink
*piiTh* (*-ii*) back
*pinsil* (*-ii*) pencil
*pleeT* plate
*pul* bridge
*puliis* (*-ii*) police
*puraanaa* old (of things)
*putlii* (*-ii*) puppet
*puučhnaa* (T) to ask
*puujaa* (sometimes =) (Hindu) prayer
*puurab* east

*raaj* reign, sovereignty
*raajaa* (=) prince (Hindu)
*raajputaanaa* Rajputana
*raat* (*-ii*) night, evening
*raftaar* (*-ii*) speed
*rag* (*-ii*) muscle, sinew
*rah$^{e}$naa* (N) to live, to stay (*soo rahaa hai* 'he's asleep, he's sleeping right now')
*rakhnaa* (T) to put down, hold, keep (*iaad rakhnaa* 'to remember')
*rang* color
*ranj* grief, sorrow



Digitized by Google

*rawaaj* custom
*reeDiioo* radio
*reel* (*-ii*) railroad
*reešam* silk
*riaasat* (*-ii*) state
*rišteedaar* relative
*rooknaa* (T) to stop something
*roonaa* (N) to weep
*roošnii* (*-ii*) light
*rooTii* (*-ii*) bread
*rooz* day, daily (*rooz-rooz* 'daily')
*roozaanaa* (=) daily
*ruknaa* (N) to be stopped
*rupiaa* rupee (about 30 cents)
*rumaal* handkerchief

*saabit hoonaa* to be proved
*saabun* soap
*saaf* clean, clear
*saaheb* gentleman
*saal* year
*saamaan* property, goods, things
*saaraa* whole, entire
*saaRhee* plus a half, half past (the hour)
*sāās* breath
*saat* seven
*saath* with
*saaTh* sixty
*sab* all, whole (*sab kahīī* everywhere)
*sabhii* all
*sač* truth
*sačmuč* really?
*safar* trip, travel (*safar karnaa* 'to travel')
*safarmainaa* (=) army engineer
*sāītaaliis* forty-seven
*sāītiis* thirty-seven
*saknaa* (N) to be able to
*salaah* (*-ii*) advice
*salaam* good morning, good evening, hello, goodbye
*samajhnaa* (N and T) to understand
*samandar* sea, ocean
*sambhaalnaa* (T) to supervise
*samjhaanaa* (T) to explain
*sandeesaa* message
*sangiin* (*-ii*) bayonet
*saniičar* Saturday
*sarkaar* government
*sarsaTh* sixty-seven
*saRak* (*-ii*) street
*sataauan* fifty-seven
*sathattar* seventy-seven
*sattaais* twenty-seven
*sattaanuee* ninety-seven
*sattaasii* eighty-seven
*sattar* seventy
*sattraa* (=) seventeen
*sau* one hundred
*sauaa* (=) a quarter past (the hour), plus a quarter
*sauaal* question
*sauaarii* (*-ii*) horseback riding
*saxt* strenuous, hard
*-see* with, from, than, since (*doo mahiinee-see rahᵉtaa hai* 'he's been staying two months'; *jahaaz-see jaanaa* 'to go by ship'; *us-see kahoo* 'tell him!')
*seeb* apple
*seer* ser ( about 2 pounds)
*siaahii* (*-ii*) ink
*sigreT* cigarettes
*siidhee* straight ahead
*siikhnaa* (T) to learn
*sikh* Sikh
*sikkaa* coin
*sikhaanaa* (T) to teach
*siloon* Ceylon
*sinamaa* movie
*sipaahii* soldier



Digitized by Google

*sir* head
*sirf* only
*sitaaraa* star
*sitambar* September
*soolaa* (=) sixteen
*soomuaar* Monday
*soonaa* gold
*soonaa* (N) to sleep
*subaa* (*-ii*) morning
*sulaa* (*-ii*) peace
*sunaanaa* (T) to tell, recite
*sunnaa* (T) to hear, listen
*suubaa* province
*suubeedaar* sergeant major
*suukhaa* dry
*suuraj* sun

*šaaed* perhaps
*šaadii* (*-ii*) wedding (*-ii šaadii karnaa* 'to get married to . . .')
*šaadii-šudaa* (=) married
*šaam* (*-ii*) evening
*šaher* city, town
*šakkar* (*-ii*) sugar
*šaraab* (*-ii*) liquor, wine
*šart* (*-ii*) bet, betting
*šauhar* husband
*šauk* (*-ii*) pleasure
*šaxs* person
*šikaaet* (*-ii*) complaint (*-ii šikaaet karnaa* 'to complain')
*šikast* (*-ii*) defeat (*šikast maannaa* 'to lose')
*šimlaa* Simla (a city)
*šoor* noise
*šukriiaa* thank you!
*šuruu hoonaa* to begin (*šuruu karnaa* 'to begin something')

*taadaad* (*-ii*) number, amount
*taakat* (*-ii*) strength
*taalib-ilm* student
*taalluk* connection
*taar* wire, telegram
*taariix* (*-ii*) date (*aaj aaTh taariix hai* 'today is the 8th')
*taaš* card (game)
*taazaa* fresh
*tab* then
*tabiiat* (*-ii*) state (of health)
*tah$^{e}$xaanaa* shelter
*taiiaar* ready
*tairnaa* (N) to swim
*-tak* up to, as far as, until (*eek ghanTee-tak rahũũ-gaa* 'I'll stay an hour'; *abhii-tak* 'even now, still')
*takliif* (*-ii*) trouble (*takliif mat-karoo* 'don't bother!')
*takriiban* approximately
*takriir* (*-ii*) speech
*talaaš karnaa* to search, seek
*tamaašaa* fun, show, entertainment
*tambaakuu* tobacco
*tamgaa* medal
*tanxuaah* (*-ii*) pay, salary
*taraf* (*-ii*) direction (*is taraf* 'around here')
*tarbuuz* watermelon
*tasuiir* (*-ii*) picture
*-ee taur-par* by way of . . .
*taxnaa* ankle
*teeis* twenty-three
*teeraa* your, yours
*teeraa* (=) thirteen
*teeraanuee* ninety-three
*teeraasii* eighty-three
*teetaaliis* forty-three
*tẽẽtiis* thirty-three
*teez* sharp, fast, seasoned (hot)
*tehaaii* one-third
*tehaatar* seventy-three



Digitized by Google

*tehuaar* or *teohaar* festival
*thakaa* tired
*thooRaa* a little, some, few
*tiin* three
*tiirath* (*-ii*) pilgrimage
*tiis* thirty
*tiisraa* third
*tirpan* fifty-three
*tirsaTh* sixty-three
*toh°faa* present
*too* then
*tooRnaa* (T) to break something
*tum* you
*tumhaaraa* your, yours
*tuRaanaa* (T) to have something broken
*tuu* you
*tuufaan* storm

*Tããg* (*-ii*) leg
*Tããgnaa* (T) to hang up
*Tailiifuun* telephone
*Takkar* (*-ii*) collision
*Thairnaa* (N) to stay, wait
*ThanDaa* cold
*ThanDii* (*-ii*) the cold, winter
*Theekaa* contract
*Thiik* all right, O.K. (*Thiik karnaa* 'to fix')
*TikiT* ticket, stamp
*Toopii* (*-ii*) hat
*TuuTaa* broken
*TuuTnaa* (N) to break, be broken

*uaaesraaee* Viceroy
*uaah* oh boy!
*uaaldaa* (*-ii*) mother
*uaalid* father
*uaaldain* parents
*uaapas* back (*uaapas aanaa* 'to come back')
*uaɡairaa* and so forth
*uahãã* (=) there
*uaisaa* of such kind
*-ii uajaa-see* because of, on account of
*uakiil* lawyer
*uakt* time
*uardii* (*-ii*) uniform
*uarnaa* otherwise
*uarziš* (*-ii*) athletics, exercise
*uazan* weight
*udhaar deenaa* to give on credit, lend (*udhaar leenaa* 'to buy on credit, borrow')
*ujiaalaa* light (i.e. not dark)
*umar* (*-ii*) age (*aap-kii umar kiaa hai* 'How old are you?')
*ummiid* (*-ii*) hope
*untiis* nineteen
*unčaas* forty-nine
*unhattar* sixty-nine
*uniaasii* seventy-nine
*unsaTh* fifty-nine
*untaaliis* thirty-nine
*untiis* twenty-nine
*uohii* the same
*uoo* that, those, he, she, it, they
*ustaad* teacher
*utaarnaa* (T) to take off
*utnaa* as much as that (*utnaa baRaa* 'that big')
*uttar* north
*ũũčaa* high
*uupar* above, upstairs
*uzur* objection

*xaakii* brown, khaki
*xaalii* empty, free
*xaas* special
*xaauind* or *xããuind* husband
*xabar* (*-ii*) news
*xandaḳ* (*-ii*) trench, ditch



Digitized by Google

*xaraab* bad (*xaraab hoonaa* 'to spoil')
*xarč karnaa* to spend
*xariidnaa* (T) to buy
*xat* letter
*xatam hoonaa* to be finished, to be ended (*xatam karnaa* 'to finish, end something')
*xatarnaak* dangerous
*xatraa* the danger (*us-mẽẽ xatraa hootaa hai* 'it is dangerous')
*xazaančii* cashier, treasurer
*xiaal* thought, opinion, idea
*xidmat* (*-ii*) service
*-ee xilaaf* against . . .
*xuaahiš* (*-ii*) desire, wish (*aap-kii kiaa xuaahiš hai* 'What do you wish?')
*xud* self
*xudaa* (=) God (*xudaa haafiz* 'goodbye'; *xudaa-kii meherbaanii* 'thank God'
*xufiiaa* (=) secret (adj.)
*xuš* glad, happy
*xušii* (*-ii*) pleasure (*xušii-see, xušii-xušii* 'gladly')
*xušmizaaj* cheerful
*xuub* well
*xuubsuurat* beautiful, pretty
*xuun* blood

*zabaan* (*-ii*) language
*zabardastii* (*-ii*) compulsion, force
*zamiin* (*-ii*) earth, ground, soil
*zang* rust (*zang jaataa hai* 'something gets rusty')
*zaraa* a little
*-ee zariiee-see* by means of . . .
*zaruurat* (*-ii*) necessity, need (*un-koo kaaġaz-kii zaruurat nahīī* 'they haven't any use for paper')
*zaruur* by all means
*zaruurii* important, necessary
*zaxam* wound
*zaxmii* wounded
*ziaadaa* (=) more
*ziaadaa-tar* mostly
*zimmeedaarii* (*-ii*) responsibility
*zoor* power, force
*zukaam* cold (illness) (*zukaam hootaa hai* '(I)'ve got a cold')

## B. LISTS OF NAMES

The following classified lists give you the Hindustani forms of a number of proper names, mostly geographical.

### 1. Cities (India and Ceylon)

| | |
|---|---|
| Agra | *aagraa* |
| Allahabad | *ilaahaabaad* |
| Bangalore | *banglaur* |
| Benares | *banaaras* |
| Bombay | *bambaii* (*-ii*) |
| Calcutta | *kalkattaa* |
| Cawnpore | *kaanpuur* |
| Colombo | *kulamboo* |
| Darjeeling | *daarjiling* |



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| Delhi | *dilli* (*-ii*) or *dehlii* (*-ii*) |
| Hyderabad | *haidaraabaad* |
| Kandy | *kāiɒii* (*-ii*) |
| Karachi | *karāāčii* (*-ii*) |
| Lahore | *laahaur* |
| Lucknow | *laknau* |
| Madras | *madraas* |
| Nagpur | *naagpuur* |
| New Delhi | *naii dehlii* (*dillii*) (*-ii*) |
| Peshawar | *pišaauar* |
| Poona | *puunaa* |
| Simla | *šimlaa* |
| Srinagar | *sriinagar* |

## 2. Sections of India

| | |
|---|---|
| Assam | *aasaam* |
| Baroda | *baʀaudaa* |
| Bengal | *bangaal* |
| Belutchistan | *biloočistaan* |
| Bihar | *behaar* |
| Central Provinces | *sii-pii* |
| Ceylon | *siloon* |
| Gwalior | *guaaliiar* |
| Indore | *indaur* |
| Mysore | *maisuur* |
| Northwest Frontier Province | *šumaalii suubaa* |
| Orissa | *uʀisaa* |
| Punjab | *panjaab* |
| Rajputana | *raajpuutaanaa* |
| Sindh | *sindh* |
| United Provinces | *iuu-pii* |

## 3. Peoples and Religions (India)

| | |
|---|---|
| Bengali | *bangaalii* |
| Christian | *isaaii* |
| Gujrati | *gujraatii* |
| Gurkha | *goorkhaa* |
| Hindu | *hinduu* |
| Marathi | *maraaʈhii* |
| Moslem | *musalmaan* |
| Punjabi | *panjaabii* |
| Pashto | *paštoo* |
| Pathan | *paʈhaan* |
| a Rajput | *raajpuut* |
| Sikh | *sikh* |
| Tamil | *ʈaamil* |

Note: Most of these adjectives, used as feminine nouns, refer to the language of the people.

## 4. Mountains

| | |
|---|---|
| Himalaya | *himaaliiaa* |
| Khyber Pass | *xaibar-kaa darraa* |
| Nilgiri Mountains | *niilgirii* (*-ii*) |
| Vindhya Mountains | *bindhiaa-čal* |



Digitized by Google

## 5. Rivers

| | |
|---|---|
| Brahmaputra | *brahamputr* (*-ii*) |
| Ganges | *gangaa* (*-ii*) |
| Indus | *sindh* (*-ii*) |

## 6. Oceans

| | |
|---|---|
| Atlantic Ocean | *aTlaanTik* |
| Indian Ocean | *bahᵉr-e-hind* |
| Pacific Ocean | *paisfik* |

## 7. Some Names in Indian Politics

*paakistaan*
*mahaasabhaa*
*mohandaas karamčand gāādhii*
*alii jinaa*
*jauaaher laal nahᵉruu*

## 8. Places and People Outside India

| | Noun (Place) | Adjective (or Noun referring to inhabitants) |
|---|---|---|
| Afghanistan | *afġaanistaan* | *afġaanii* |
| Africa | *afriikaa* (=) | *afriikii* |
| America | *amriikaa* (=) | *amriikan* |
| Annam | *anaam* | *anaamii* |
| Asia | *eešiiaa* | |
| Australia | *aasTreeliiaa* | |
| Bhutan | *bhuuTaan* | *bhuuTaanii* |
| Burma | *barmaa* | *barmii* |
| China | *čiin* | *čiinii* |
| Egypt | *misar* | *misrii* |
| England | *inglistaan* | *angreez* 'Englishman; the British' (noun)<br>*angreezii* 'English' |
| Europe | *iuurap* | |
| France | *fraans* | *fraansii* |
| Germany | *jarmanii* (*-ii*) | *jarman* |
| Italy | *iTlii* (*-ii*) | *iTaaliian* |
| Iran | *iiraan* | *iiraanii* |
| Japan | *jaapaan* | *jaapaanii* |
| Java | *jaauaa* | *jaauaanii* |
| Kabul | *kaabul* | |
| London | *landan* | |
| Malay Peninsula | *malaaiaa* | |
| Mandalay | *mããDlaa* | |
| Manila | *maniilaa* | |
| Mecca | *makkaa* | |
| Nepal | *naipaal* | *naipaalii* |
| New York | *nuuiaark* | |
| Persia (see Iran) | | *faarsii* (language) |
| Philippines | *filipiin* | *filipiinoo* |
| Rangoon | *ranguun* | |



Digitized by Google

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Russia | *ruus* | *ruusii* |
| Singapore | *singapuur* | |
| Sumatra | *sumaal(t)raa* | *sumaat(t)rii* |
| Siam (see Thailand) | | |
| Teheran | *teh$^{e}$raan* | |
| Thailand | *siaam* | *siaamii* |
| Tibet | *tibbat* | *tibbatii* |
| Turkey | *tarkii (-ii)* | *'tark* 'a Turk, Turks' (noun)<br>*tarkii* 'Turkish' |

## C. IRREGULAR VERB FORMS

Here is a summary review of the few irregular verb forms which exist in Hindustani (If you have trouble with other forms, look up the survey charts on pp. 59, 195, and 298).

(1) The masculine singular past tense form of stems ending in *-aa* and *-oo* have *-iaa* instead of the usual *-aa: nahaaiaa* 'he bathed' (but *nahaaee* 'they bathed'); *rooiaa* 'he wept' (but *rooii* 'she wept').

(2) *jaanaa* 'to go' has a completely irregular past tense from the stem *ga-*. The masculine singular ending is *-iaa;* those of the feminine and the plural are regular: *gaiaa* 'he went'; *gaee* 'they went'. (The form which precedes *karnaa* in the construction which means 'to be used to doing something', is, however, formed from the main stem: *jaaiaa kartee thee* 'they walked habitually').

(3) Stems ending in *-ii* lose this *-ii* before the feminine past tense endings *-ii* and *-ĩī*. Before the polite command ending *-iiee*, these verbs insert *-j-: piinaa* 'to drink': *čaaee pii* '(I) drank tea', *piijiiee* 'please drink'.

(4) The verbs *deenaa* 'to give' and *leenaa* 'to take' form their past tense as well as the polite command form from a stem *dii-, lii-: diiaa, liiaa, diiee, lii, lĩī, diijiiee, liijiiee*. The same verbs form their subjunctive from a stem *d-, l-: dũũ, dẽẽ, lee, loo*.

(5) *karnaa* 'to do' forms its past tense and polite command form from a stem *kii-: kiiaa, kĩī, kiijiiee*.

(6) *hoonaa* has two sets of forms throughout the present and past tense, the shorter one meaning 'to be': *hũũ, hai, hãĩ, hoo; thaa, thee, thii, thĩī;* the longer one meaning 'to become': *hootaa hũũ* etc.; *huuaa, huuee, huuii, huuĩī*. The irregular subjunctive is the same for both meanings: *hũũ, hoo, hoo* in the singular; *hõõ, hoo, hõõ* in the plural.

## D. THE MAKE-UP OF WORDS

Our material has not been sufficient to show much of the pattern according to which different words of similar form and similar meaning are related to each other.



Digitized by Google

Only a few cases were treated in the *Comments*, such as the *-uãã-*numerals (corresponding to the *-th-*numerals in English: *dasuãã* 'tenth'), which can be formed from the plain numerals (Unit 13). This case was chosen because it is "safe": any plain numeral above seven can be treated in this manner, no matter which particular number you pick. In this, the process is much like the ordinary matter of forming cases from nouns, or verb forms from verb stems.

Obviously, such words as *kaamiaab* 'successful' and *kaamiaabii* 'success' are related, too, by a simple process, namely that of adding *-ii* to the shorter word. The difference is that one can't predict where such an addition is possible, and where not. That is why "word formation" has no safe rules to rely on, and why it is quite enough to mention one or two facts.

One concerns precisely the case which we have just mentioned, namely the *-ii* lengthening. Unfortunately, Hindustani has two quite different *-ii* endings which work in opposite directions. The first *-ii* makes feminine nouns out of adjectives or other nouns: *kaamiaab* 'successful': *kaamiaabii* (*-ii*) 'success'; *garam* 'warm': *garmii* (*-ii*) 'heat'; *lambaa* 'long': *lambaaii* (*-ii*) 'length' (The final *-aa* of the adjective is, however, mostly dropped in the process: *ThanDaa* 'cold': *ThanDii* (*-ii*) 'the cold, winter'). This feminine *-ii*, describes, on the whole, the quality of the adjective as an abstract matter ("the being successful", "the quality of being long"). The other *-ii* is totally different: it makes adjectives out of nouns: *hindustaan* 'India': *hindustaanii* 'Indian'; *mulk* 'country': *mulkii* 'political'. Sometimes, these adjectives are in turn used as (masculine or feminine) nouns: *hindustaanii* 'an Indian'. These two things have to be kept apart.

The other point concerns *-uaalaa*. This ending, as you have no doubt noticed, is used very freely, in fact almost "safely" after all kinds of nouns (infinitives are nouns, and that is where the *-neeuaalaa* forms of verbs come in!). Words in *-uaalaa* refer to persons (females are referred to by *-uaalii*): *dukaanuaalaa, Tailiifuunuaalii laRkii, us-kee baazuu-uaalaa aadmii* 'the man (who is) at his side'. The meaning of *-uaalaa* may be vaguely described as 'person having to do with X'.

## E. ENGLISH-HINDUSTANI REMINDER LIST

If you have forgotten the Hindustani word for something, look up an English word with a somewhat similar meaning. After it you may find the word you want. If you still don't remember it, look it up in the *Hindustani-English Glossary*. There you will find the information you need on the exact meaning of the word, its gender or construction, the phrases in which it is used, etc. This *Reminder List* does not contain any such informa-



Digitized by Google

tion, nor does it list all such words as *iee*, *uahãã*, *-kaa*, which have been dealt with in the *Word Study* sections. (See *Table of Contents*.)

Note that phrases with *karnaa* usually have a counterpart (with different meaning) with *hoonaa*, and that transitive stems are more often found with following *deenaa* or *leenaa* (neuter ones, with following *jaanaa*) than as simple verbs. This list will have either the *karnaa* or the *hoonaa* phrase, not both. Likewise, it will show only *marnaa*, but not *mar jaanaa*.

| | |
|---|---|
| about . . . | *-ii baabat* |
| above | *uupar* |
| account | *hisaab* |
| address | *pataa* |
| advance | *aagee baRhnaa* |
| advice | *raaee salaah* |
| ado | *dhuum-dhaam* |
| after . . . | *-ee baad* |
| afternoon | *doo paher* |
| again | *phir* |
| against . . . | *-ee xilaaf* |
| age | *umar* |
| ago | *huuaa; guzraa* |
| agriculture | *kheetii* |
| aim | *nišaanaa* |
| air | *hauaa* |
| airplane | *hauaaii jahaaz* |
| all | *sab; sabhii* |
| all right | *Thiik* |
| Allahabad | *ilaahaabaad* |
| alone | *akeelaa* |
| also, too | *bhii* |
| America(n) | *amriikaa(n)* |
| and | *aur* |
| and so forth | *uaġairaa* |
| angry | *naaraaz* |
| animal | *jaanuar* |
| ankle | *taxnaa* |
| anna (coin) | *aanaa* |
| answer | *jauaab* |
| appear | *maaluum hoonaa; dikhnaa* |
| apple | *seeb* |
| apply | *lagaanaa* |
| approximately | *taḳriiban* |
| April | *apreel* |
| arm | *bããh* |
| army | *fauj; laškar* |
| arrest | *giraftaar karnaa* |
| arrive | *pahõčnaa* |
| ask | *puuchnaa* |
| athletics | *uarziš* |
| attack | *hamlaa* |
| attentive | *hušiaar* |
| August | *agast* |
| automobile | *mooTar (-ii)* |
| award | *inaam deenaa* |
| axe | *kulhaaRii* |
| back, the | *piiTh* |
| back (adv.) | *uaapas* |
| bad, wicked | *badmaaš* |
| bad thing | *harj* |
| baggage | *saamaan* |
| ball, sphere | *gẽẽd* |
| bank, shore | *kinaaraa* |
| barber | *hajjaam* |
| bat | *ballaa* |
| batallion | *palTan* |
| battle line | *moorčaa* |
| bathe | *nahaanaa* |
| bayonet | *sangiin* |
| bear | *bardaašt kar saknaa* |
| beat | *maarnaa* |
| beautiful | *xuubsuurat* |
| because of | *-ii uajaa-see* |



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| bed | *palang* |
| before . . . | *-ee pahᵉlee* |
| beg | *māāgnaa* |
| begin something | *šuruu hoonaa; šuruu karnaa* |
| behind | *piičhee* |
| belief | *etḳaad; iaḳiin* |
| below | *niičee* |
| belt | *čapraas* |
| Benares | *banaaras* |
| besides . . . | *-ee alaauaa* |
| bet | *šart* |
| big | *baRaa* |
| bill | *nooT* |
| bind | *bāādhnaa* |
| bitter | *kaRuaa* |
| blind | *andhaa* |
| blood | *xuun* |
| boat (river) | *naaoo* |
| body | *badan* |
| Bombay | *bambaii* |
| bone | *haDDii* |
| book | *kitaab* |
| borrow, buy on credit | *udhaar leenaa* |
| both | *doonōō* |
| boundary | *had* |
| boy | *laRkaa* |
| brain | *dimaaḳ* |
| branch | *Daal* |
| brave | *bahaadur* |
| bread | *rooTii* |
| break something | *tooRnaa* |
| breath | *dam; sāās* |
| brick | *īīT* |
| brief | *muxtasir* |
| bridge | *pul* |
| broken | *TuuTaa* |
| broken, to have something | *tuRaanaa* |
| brook, stream | *naalaa* |
| brother | *bhaaii* |
| brown, khaki | *braun; xaakii* |
| building | *imaarat* |
| bullet | *goolaa* |
| Burma | *barmaa* |
| burn | *jalnaa* |
| bury | *dafan karnaa* |
| bus | *bas* |
| business | *beopaar* |
| busy | *masruuf* |
| but | *leekin* |
| butter | *makkhan* |
| by all means | *zaruur* |
| Calcutta | *kalkattaa* |
| call, to | *bulaanaa* |
| I can | *saktaa hūū* |
| camp | *paRaaoo* |
| candy | *miThaaii* |
| capital city | *paaetaxt* |
| card (playing) | *taaš* |
| care | *hušiaarii* |
| carpenter | *baRhaii* |
| cashier, | *xazaančii* |
| catch | *pakaRnaa* |
| catch, be hit | *looknaa* |
| celebrate | *manaanaa* |
| cemetery | *ḳabrustaan* |
| Ceylon | *siloon* |
| chair | *kursii* |
| a chatank (about 2 ounces) | *čhaTāāk* |
| chance | *mauḳaa* |
| by chance | *ittefaaḳ-see* |
| check | *ček* |
| cheerful | *xušmizaaj* |
| child | *bačča* |
| Christian | *isaaii* |
| church | *girjaa* |
| cigarettes | *sigreT* |
| circle | *čakkar* |
| city | *šaher* |



Digitized by Google

class *kilaas; darjaa*
clean, clear *saaf*
clerk *munšii*
climate *aab-o-hauaa*
closed *band*
clothes *kapʀee*
cloud *baadal*
coat *kooT*
coin *sikkaa*
cold (illness) *zukaam*
cold, winter *ThanDii*
collect, to be paid by addressee *bairang*
collect, save *jamaa karnaa*
college *kaalij*
collision *Takkar*
color *rang*
come *aanaa*
come back *uaapas aanaa*
come out *nikalnaa*
complaint *šikaaet*
compulsion *zabardastii*
condition, state of health *haalat*
conforming, according to . . . *-ee mutaabiḳ*
connection *taalluḳ*
contract *Theekaa*
conversation *baatčiit*
cook, to (something) *pakaanaa*
corporal *haualdaar*
corn *makaaii*
corpse *murdaa*
country *mulk*
cow *gaaee*
crazy *paagal*
crime *jurm*
credit, to buy on *udhaar leenaa*
credit, to give on *udhaar deenaa*
crocodile *magar*
cross, to *paar karnaa*
cup *piaalaà*
current *dhaar*
custom *dastuur; rauaaj*
customer *gaahak*
cut, to *kaaTnaa*
cut, to have *kaTaanaa*

damage *nuḳsaan*
danger *xatraa*
dangerous *xatarnaak*
dark *andheeraa*
date *taariix*
doubtless *beešak*
daughter *beeTii*
day *din*
daily *roozaanaa*
deaf *bah$^{e}$raa*
debt *ġarzaa*
December *disambar*
decision *faislaa*
deep *gah$^{e}$raa*
defeat, to *fatee karnaa*
defeated, to be *haarnaa; šikast maannaa*
delay *deer*
department *mahokmaa*
desire *xuaahiš*
destroy *barbaad karnaa*
die, the *pāāsaa*
die *marnaa*
difference *farak*
different *muxtalif*
difficult *muškil*
dig *khoodnaa*
direction *taraf*
dirty *mailaa*
disappear *ġaaeb hoonaa*
dishonest *beeiimaan*
distance *faaslaa*
ditch *xandaḳ*



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| do | *karnaa* |
| doctor | *Daakтar; hakiim* |
| dollar | *Daalar* |
| done, to have something | *karaanaa* |
| don't! | *mat-* |
| door | *daruaazaa* |
| down | *niičee* |
| draw, pull, to | *khīīčnaa* |
| drill | *ḳauaaed* |
| drink, to | *ṗiinaa* |
| drive | *čalaanaa* |
| driver | *čalaaneeuaalaa* |
| drop something | *giraanaa* |
| drown | *Duubnaa* |
| dry | *suukhaa* |
| duty, obligation | *farz* |
| duty (customs) | *mahᵉsuul* |
| each, every | *har* |
| ear | *kaan* |
| early | *jaldii* |
| ease | *aasaanii* |
| east | *ṗuurab* |
| easy | *aasaan* |
| eat | *khaanaa* |
| egg | *anDaa* |
| electricity | *bijlii* |
| elevator | *lifт* |
| else | *aur* |
| employee | *baabuu* |
| empty | *xaalii* |
| end, the | *axiir* |
| end, to | *xatam hoonaa; band hoonaa* |
| enemy | *dušman* |
| engineer (army) | *safarmainaa* |
| England | *inglistaan* |
| English | *angreezii* |
| enjoy oneself | *mazaa karnaa* |
| enlist someone | *bhartii karnaa* |
| enough | *kaafii* |
| enter | *daaxil hoonaa* |
| entertainment | *tamaašaa* |
| entirely | *bilkul* |
| envelope | *lifaafaa* |
| equal | *baraabar* |
| evening | *šaam* |
| ever | *kabhii* |
| exchange (give) | *badlii deenaa* |
| exchange (take) | *badlii leenaa* |
| excuse, to | *maaf karnaa* |
| expense | *xarč* |
| explain | *samjhaanaa* |
| extent (to such an) | *ḳadar* |
| eye | *ããkh* |
| face | *čehᵉraa* |
| factory | *kaarxaanaa* |
| fake . . . | *naklii* |
| fall, to | *girnaa; paRnaa* |
| family | *baal-baččee* |
| famine | *ḳahet* |
| famous | *mašhuur* |
| far | *duur* |
| farm | *kheet* |
| farming | *kheetii* |
| fast | *teez* |
| father | *uaalid; baaṗ* |
| fear | *Dar* |
| fear, to | *Darnaa* |
| February | *faruarii* |
| festival | *tehuaar; teohaar* |
| fever | *buxaar* |
| field | *maidaan* |
| fields | *kheet* |



Digitized by Google

fight, to *laʀnaa*
fill *bharnaa*
find *paanaa*
fine *jurmaanaa*
fire *aag*
fish *mačhlii*
fist *muTThii*
fix something *Thiik karnaa, marammat karnaa*
flatiron *istrii*
flood *baaʀh*
floor, carpet *faraš*
flower *phuul*
fog *koh°raa*
-fold *-gunaa*
four-fold (*čaar-guṅaa*)
food *khaanaa*
foolish *naadaan*
foot *pair*
foot, on *paidal*
for . . . *-ee liiee*
forget *bhuulnaa*
forgiven, to be *maaf hoonaa*
forgiveness *maafii*
fork *kāāTaa*
fort *ḳilaa*
freight train *maalgaaʀii*
Friday *jumaa*

friend *doost*
friendship *doostii*
frost *jaaʀaa*
fun, to have *mazaa karnaa*

gambler *khilaaʀii*
game (sport) *kheel*
game (dice, cards, etc.) *juuaa*
Ganges *gangaa*
garden *baaġ*
gentleman *saaheb*
girl *laʀkii*
give *deenaa*
glad *xuš*
gladly *xušii-xušii; xušii-see*
glasses (spectacles) *ainak*
go *čalnaa; jaanaa*
go by, pass *guzarnaa*
make go by *guzaarnaa*
God *xudaa*
god, a (Hindu) *deeotaa*
gold *soonaa*
gone, to be *čalaa jaanaa*
good *aččhaa*
goodbye *xudaa haafiz*

good morning, etc. *salaam*
goods *maal*
government *saṙkaar*
grain *ġallaa*
grenade *sangiin*
grief *ranj*
ground *zamiin*
grow *paidaa hoonaa*
guest *meh°maan*
guilt *ḳusuur*
gunpowder *goolaa-baaruud*
Gurkha (Nepalese soldier) *goorkhaa*

habit *aadat*
hair *baal* (plural)
half *aadhaa*
hammer *maartaul*
hand *haath*
handkerchief *rumaal*
hang up, to *TāāgnaaTaa; laTkaanaa*
harvest *paidaauaarii*
hat *Toopii*
have; I have to (*mujh-koo*) *paʀtaa hai*
head *sir*



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| hear | *sunnaa* |
| heart | *dil* |
| heavy | *bhaarii* |
| help | *madad* |
| help, to | *madad karnaa* |
| hide something | *čhipaanaa* |
| Himalaya | *himaliiaa* |
| Hindu | *hinduu* |
| Hindustani | *hindustaanii* |
| high | *ūūčaa* |
| hole | *čheed* |
| at . . .'s home | *-ee iahãã* |
| honest | *iimaandaar* |
| honor | *izzat* |
| hope | *ummiid* |
| horse | *ghooRaa* |
| horseback riding | *sauaarii* |
| hotel | *hooTal* |
| hour | *ghanTaa* |
| house | *ghar* |
| how do you do | *aadaab arz* |
| hurt | *dard karnaa* |
| husband | *šauhar; xaauind* |

| | |
|---|---|
| ice | *baraf* |
| idle, useless | *fuzuul* |
| ill, sick | *biimaar* |
| illiterate | *beepaRhaa* |
| important | *zaruurii* |
| India | *hindustaan* |
| injury | *čooT* |
| ink | *siaahii* |
| inside | *andar* |
| instead of . . . | *-ee bajaaee* |
| intelligence | *hušiaarii* |
| intelligent | *hušiaar* |
| intention | *iraadaa* |
| interest | *dilčaspii* |
| interesting | *dilčasp* |
| interval | *darmiiaan* |
| invitation | *daauat (-ii)* |
| Italy | *iTlii (-ii)* |
| January | *januarii* |
| Japanese | *jaapaanii* |
| judge, deputy | *DipTii* |
| jhundee-moondee (a game) | *jhanDii-munDii* |
| July | *julaaii* |
| June | *juun* |

| | |
|---|---|
| Karachi | *karããčii* |
| keep in mind, to | *iaad rakhnaa* |
| key | *kunjii* |
| kill | *maar Daalnaa* |
| kindness | *meherbaanii* |
| king | *baadšaah* |
| knife | *čhurii* |
| knife, battle | *kukrii* |
| know | *jaannaa* |
| know, I don't | *mujh-koo maaluum nahĩĩ* |
| kos (= 2 miles) | *koos* |
| lake | *jhiil* |
| lamp | *čiraag* |
| land, soil | *zamiin* |
| language | *zabaan* |
| laugh, to | *hãsnaa* |
| laundryman | *dhoobii* |
| law | *qaanuun* |
| lawyer | *uakiil* |
| leaf | *pattaa* |
| learn | *siikhnaa* |
| leave | *čhuTTii* |
| leave, to; get away | *čhuuTnaa* |



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| leave something | *čhooRnaa* |
| left (side) | *baaiãã* |
| leg | *TããG* |
| length | *lambaaii* |
| less | *kam* |
| letter | *čiTThii xat* |
| lie, falsehood | *jhuuT* |
| lie down | *leeTnaa* |
| light, the | *roošnii* |
| light (i.e., not heavy) | *halkaa* |
| light (i.e., not dark) | *uijiaalaa* |
| light, to | *jalaanaa* |
| lightning | *bijlii* |
| like, similar | *-ii taraa* |
| like, to | *pasand karnaa* |
| lime | *čuunaa* |
| line | *laen* |
| liquor, wine | *šaraab* |
| listen | *sunnaa* |
| literate | *paRhaa* |
| little, a; some | *thooRaa; zaraa* |
| live, to; to stay | *rahᵉnaa* |
| long | *lambaa* |
| look | *deekhnaa* |
| lost, to get | *khoo jaanaa* |
| love | *mahobbat* |
| love, to | *mahobbat karnaa* |
| luck | *ḳismat* |
| lungs | *pheepRaa* |
| lying down | *paRaa* |
| made, to be | *bannaa* |
| made, to have something | *banuaanaa* |
| mail | *Daak* |
| make | *banaanaa* |
| male, man | *mard* |
| man | *aadmii* |
| management | *inteezaam* |
| map | *naḳšaa* |
| March | *maarč* |
| marching off | *kuuč* |
| market | *bazaar* |
| married | *šaadii-šudaa* |
| married, to get | *šaadii karnaa* |
| matter | *baat* |
| matter, it doesn't | *kuch baat nahĩĩ* |
| May | *maii* (*-ii*) |
| meaning | *matlab* |
| means, by . . . of | *-ee zariiee-see* |
| meat | *goošt* |
| mechanic | *kaariigar* |
| medal | *tamġaa* |
| medicine | *dauaaii* |
| meet | *milnaa* |
| meeting | *jalsaa* |
| message | *sandeesaa* |
| metal | *dhaat* |
| middle | *biič* |
| milk | *duudh* |
| minute | *minaT* |
| misfortune | *musiibat* |
| mistake | *ġaltii* |
| Monday | *soomuaar* |
| money | *paisaa* |
| monkey | *bandar* |
| month | *mahiinaa* |
| mouth | *mũĩ* |
| moon | *čããd* |
| Moslem | *musalmaan* |
| more | *ziaadaa; aur* |
| morning | *subaa* |
| mortar | *gaaraa* |
| mosque | *masjid* |
| mostly | *ziaadaa-tar* |



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| mother | *uaaldaa; mãã* |
| mountain | *pahaaR* |
| more | *ziaadaa* |
| movie | *baaeskoop; sinamaa* |
| muscle | *rag* |
| music | *gaanaa bajaanaa* |
| must, I | *paRtaa hai* |
| nail | *kiil* |
| name | *naam* |
| national | *ḳaumii* |
| near | *nazdiik* |
| necessary | *zaruurii* |
| necessary, it is | *čaahiiee* |
| necessity, need | *zaruurat* |
| neighborhood | *mohallaa* |
| nephew, brother's son | *bhatiijaa* |
| net | *jaal* |
| new | *naiaa* |
| New York | *nuuiaark* |
| news | *xabar (-ii)* |
| newspaper | *axbaar* |
| night | *raat (-ii)* |
| no | *jii nahĩĩ* |
| noise | *šoor* |
| north | *uttar* |
| nose | *naak* |
| not | *na-; nahĩĩ* |
| November | *nauambar* |
| now | *ab; abhii* |
| number | *nambar* |
| number, amount | *taadaad* |
| nurse | *nars* |
| nut | *meeuaa* |
| obey | *maannaa* |
| objection | *uzur* |
| occupation | *ḳabzaa* |
| o'clock | *bajee* |
| October | *aktuubar* |
| office | *daftar* |
| officer, official | *afsar* |
| often | *aksar* |
| old (of people) | *buuRhaa* |
| old (of things) | *puraanaa* |
| one | *eek* |
| only | *sirf* |
| opened, to be | *khulnaa* |
| opinion | *raaee* |
| or | *iaa* |
| order | *hukum* |
| other | *aur; duusraa* |
| otherwise | *uarnaa; nahĩĩ too* |
| our | *hamaaraa* |
| outside | *baahar* |
| ox | *bail* |
| package | *banDal* |
| pain | *dard* |
| pair | *jooRaa* |
| palace | *mahel* |
| pants | *patluun* |
| paper | *kaaḡaz* |
| parachutist | *čhatriiuaalaa sipaahii* |
| paradise | *baikunTh* |
| parents | *mãã-baap; uaaldain* |
| part | *hissaa* |
| past | *guzraa* |
| patriot(ic) | *mulkii-xairxuaah* |
| pay, salary | *tanxuaah* |
| peace | *sulaa* |
| pen | *ḳalam* |
| pencil | *pinsil* |
| people | *loog* |
| percent | *fii-sadii* |
| permission | *ijaazat* |
| person | *šaxs* |



Digitized by Google

pice (coins) *paisaa*
picture *tasuiir*
pilgrimage *tiirath*
place *jagaa*
plain *maidaan*
plan, to *iraadaa karnaa*
plate *pleeT*
play a game *kheelnaa*
play an instrument *bajaanaa*
please *meherbaanii-see*
pleasure *šauk; xušii*
plus a half *saaRhee*
pocket *jeeb*
pole *jhanDii*
police inspector *daaroogaa*
political *mulkii*
poor *gariib*
poor, to be pitied *bičaaraa*
population *aabaadii (-ii)*
port *bandar-gaah*
possible *mumkin*
post office *Daakxaanaa*
pour *Daalnaa*
power *zoor*
practice *mahaaoraa*
pray, to (Mohammedan) *namaaz paRhnaa*
prayer (Hindu) *puujaa*
prayer (Mohammedan) *namaaz*
present, at hand *maujuud*
present *toh°faa*
press, to iron *istrii karnaa*
price *daam; kiimat*
prince (Moslem) *nauaab*
print: to be printed *čhapnaa*
prison *jeel*
prisoner *kaidii*
profit *faaedaa*
prohibition, ban *manaahii*
property *saamaan*
property, landed *milkiiat*
proprietor, boss *maalik*
prove: to be proved *saabit hoonaa*
province *suubaa*
punching and kicking *haathaa-paaii*
puppet *putlii*
put down *rakhnaa*
put on, wear *pahennaa*
quarter *paaoo*
quarter to (the hour), minus a quarter *paunee*
quarter past (the hour) plus a quarter *sauaa*
question *sauaal*
quiet *čup*
radio *reeDiioo*
railroad *reel*
rain *baariš*
raincoat *barsaatii*
raise, to *paidaa karnaa*
rank *oh°daa*
Rajputana *raajputaanaa*
rather *balkee*
raw *kaččaa*
read *paRhnaa*



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| ready | *taiiaar* |
| real | *aslii* |
| really | *dar-haḳiiḳat* |
| really? | *sačmuč* |
| reason | *uajaa; uajee* |
| reign | *raaj* |
| relative | *rišteedaar* |
| rent | *kiraaiaa* |
| repair | *marammat* |
| responsibility | *zimmeedaarii* |
| result, good | *faaedaa* |
| rest, the | *aaraam* |
| restaurant | *khaanee-kii dukaan (-ii)* |
| retreat | *haTnaa* |
| rice | *čaaual* |
| rich | *amiir* |
| rifle | *banduuḳ* |
| right, privilege | *axtiaar* |
| right (side) | *dahᵉnaa* |
| right away | *fauran* |
| river | *nadii* |
| roof | *čhat* |
| room | *kamraa* |
| rule, sovereignty | *hukuumat* |
| run, to | *bhaagnaa* |
| rupee | *rupiaa* |
| rust | *zang* |
| sacrifice | *ḳurbaanii* |
| safe | *mahᵉfuuz* |
| sailor | *jahaazii* |
| salesclerk | *dukaanuaalaa* |
| salt | *namak* |
| sand | *baaluu* |
| Saturday | *saniičar* |
| save | *bačaanaa* |
| save money | *jamaa karnaa* |
| saw | *aarii* |
| say | *kahᵉnaa* |
| school | *iskuul* |
| scores of . . . | *biisiiõõ* |
| sea, ocean | *samandar* |
| search, seek, to | *talaaš karnaa* |
| second, other | *duusraa* |
| secret | *xufiiaa* |
| see | *deekhnaa* |
| to be seen | *dikhnaa* |
| seem, to | *maaluum hoonaa* |
| self | *xud* |
| sell | *beečnaa* |
| to be sold, be for sale | *biknaa* |
| separate, independent | *alag* |
| September | *sitambar* |
| ser (about 2 pounds) | *seer* |
| sergeant | *jamaadaar* |
| sergeant major | *suubeedaar* |
| servant | *naukar* |
| service | *xidmat* |
| shake something | *hilaanaa* |
| sharp | *teez* |
| shell | *sangiin* |
| shelter | *tahᵉxaanaa* |
| ship | *jahaaz* |
| shirt | *ḳamiiz* |
| shoe, pair of shoes | *juutaa* |
| shoot, to | *čalaanaa* |
| shop | *dukaan* |
| shopkeeper | *dukandaar* |
| show | *dikhaanaa* |
| sick | *biimaar* |
| side | *baazuu* |
| Sikh | *sikh* |
| silk | *reešam* |
| Simla | *šimlaa* |



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| sing | *gaanaa* |
| sir! | *janaab* |
| sister | *bahen* |
| sit down | *baiTHnaa* |
| situated | *aabaad* |
| skin | *jild* |
| sky | *aasmaan* |
| sleep, to | *soonaa* |
| sleeve | *aastiin* |
| slowly | *aahestaa; dhiiree* |
| small | *čhooTaa* |
| snow | *baraf* |
| soap | *saabun* |
| sock, stocking | *moozaa* |
| soldier | *sipaahii* |
| sometimes | *kabhii kabhii* |
| somewhere, anywhere | *kahīī* |
| son | *beeTaa* |
| sorrow | *afsoos* |
| sound, to | *bajnaa* |
| south | *dakkhin* |
| speak | *boolnaa* |
| special | *xaas* |
| speech | *taḳriir* |
| speed | *raftaar* |
| spelling | *hijjee* |
| spend | *xarč karnaa* |
| spoon | *čamčaa* |
| sprain | *mooč* |
| stain | *daag* |
| stake | *daaõõ* |
| stamp | *TikiT* |
| stand | *kharaa hoonaa* |
| star | *sitaaraa* |
| start | *šuruu hoonaa* |
| starving, to be | *faaḳaa karnaa* |
| state | *riaasat* |
| state (of health) | *tabiiat* |
| station | *isTeešan* |
| statue | *muurat* |
| stay, to | *rahenaa* |
| steal | *čuraanaa* |
| step | *ḳadam* |
| stick something | *gaaRnaa* |
| stocking | *moozaa* |
| stomach | *peeT* |
| stone | *patthar* |
| stop; to be stopped | *ruknaa* |
| stop something, to | *rooknaa* |
| storehouse | *gudaam* |
| storm | *tuufaan* |
| story | *kahaanii; ḳissaa* |
| straight ahead | *siidhee* |
| stranger | *ajnabii* |
| stream, run, to | *bahenaa* |
| street | *saRak* |
| strength | *taaḳat* |
| strenuous, hard | *saxt* |
| strong | *mazbuut* |
| student | *taalib-ilm* |
| study, to | *paRhnaa* |
| success | *kaamiaabii* |
| successful | *kaamiaab* |
| sugar | *šakkar* |
| suitcase | *bakas* |
| suitcase | *beeoḳuuf* |
| sun | *suuraj* |
| Sunday | *ituaar* |
| sunshine | *dhuup* |
| supervise | *sambhaalnaa* |
| surround | *gheernaa* |
| sweet | *miiThaa* |
| swim | *tairnaa* |
| sympathy | *hamdardii* |



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| table | *meez* |
| tailor | *darzii* |
| take, take away | *leenaa* |
| take somewhere | *lee jaanaa* |
| take off | *utaarnaa* |
| take out | *nikaalnaa* |
| taste, pleasure | *mazaa* |
| tasty, interesting | *mazeedaar* |
| tax | *mahᵉsuul* |
| tea | *čaaee* |
| teach | *paRhaanaa; sikhaanaa* |
| teacher | *ustaad* |
| team | *paarTii* |
| tear: to get torn | *phaTnaa* |
| tear something | *phaaRnaa* |
| telegram | *taar* |
| telephone | *Tailiifuun* |
| tell | *bataanaa* |
| tell a story | *sunaanaa* |
| temple | *mandir* |
| thank you | *meherbaanii; šukriiaa* |
| theatre | *naaTak* |
| theft | *čoorii* |
| therefore | *is liiee* |
| thin | *patlaa* |
| thing | *čiiz* |
| third, one | *tehaaii* |
| thirsty | *piaasaa* |
| thought, opinion | *xiaal* |
| thousands of . . . | *hazaarōō* |
| throw | *Daalnaa; phēčknaa* |
| Thursday | *jumraat* |
| ticket, stamp | *TikiT* |
| ticket seller | *TikiT baabuu* |
| time | *uaḳt* |
| time (= occurrence, turn) | *dafaa* |
| tired | *thakaa* |
| tobacco | *tambaakuu* |
| today | *aaj* |
| toilet | *paaxaanaa* |
| tomorrow | *kal* |
| tools | *auzaar* |
| tooth | *dāāt* |
| torn | *phaTaa* |
| town | *šaher* |
| trade | *peešaa* |
| train | *gaaRii* |
| travel, to | *safar karnaa* |
| tree | *daraxt; peeR* |
| trench | *xandaḳ* |
| trial | *muḳadmaa* |
| trick | *dhookaa; dagaabaazii* |
| trip, travel | *safar* |
| trouble | *takliif; musiibat* |
| truth | *sač* |
| try | *koošiš karnaa* |
| try (one's luck) | *aazmaanaa* |
| turban | *pagRii* |
| turn | *paarii* |
| Tuesday | *mangal* |
| umbrella | *čhatrii* |
| uncle, father's brother | *čačča* |
| unconscious | *beehooš* |
| understood | *samajhnaa* |
| uniform | *uaṛdii* |
| upside down | *ulTaa* |
| upstairs | *uupar* |
| use, to | *isteemaal karnaa* |



Digitized by Google

| | |
|---|---|
| used, to be, to be applied | *lagnaa* |
| useless | *fuzuul* |
| usual, ordinary | *maamuli* |
| usually | *aam taur-par* |
| vacation | *čhuTTii* |
| valuable, precious | *ḳiimtii* |
| very | *bahot* |
| Viceroy | *uaaesraaee* |
| victory | *fatee* |
| visit | *mulaaḳaat* |
| visit, to | *mulaaḳaat karnaa* |
| vomit, to | *ḳaee karnaa* |
| vomiting | *ḳaee* |
| wait for, to . . . | *inteezaar karnaa* |
| wait, stop in | *Thairnaa* |
| walk, to | *paidal jaanaa* |
| wall | *diuaar* |
| want | *čaahᵉnaa* |
| war | *laRaaii; jang* |
| warm | *garam* |
| wash | *dhoonaa* |
| watchman | *darbaan* |
| water | *paanii* |
| by way of . . . | *-ee taur-par* |
| weak | *kamzoor* |
| weapon | *hathiaar* |
| wear | *pahennaa* |
| weather, climate | *mausam* |
| wedding | *šaadii* |
| Wednesday | *budh* |
| weep, to | *roonaa* |
| weight | *uazan* |
| well, the | *kuuãã* |
| well | *xuub; ačchaa* |
| west | *pačchim* |
| wet | *giilaa* |
| wheat | *geehũũ* |
| whole, entire | *saaraa* |
| wick | *battii* |
| wide | *čauRaa* |
| width | *čauRaaii* |
| wife | *biiuii* |
| win, defeat, to | *jiitnaa* |
| wind | *hauaa* |
| window | *khiRkii* |
| wire, telegram | *taar* |
| with | *-ee saath* |
| without | *-ee baġair* |
| woman | *aurat* |
| wood | *lakRii* |
| word | *lafz* |
| work | *kaam* |
| work, to | *kaam karnaa* |
| workman | *mazduur* |
| world | *duniiãã* |
| worn out | *phaTaa* |
| worship | *ibaadat* |
| wound | *zaxam* |
| wounded | *zaxmii* |
| write, to | *likhnaa* |
| wrong | *ġalat* |
| yard | *gaz* |
| year | *baras; saal* |
| yes | *hãã; jii hãã* |
| yesterday | *kal* |
| young | *jauaan* |

## Numbers

| | |
|---|---|
| ½ | *aadhaa* |
| 1 | *eek* |
| 1st | *pahᵉlaa* |
| 1½ | *DeeRh* |



Digitized by Google

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | *doo* | 24 | *čaubiis* | 52 | *baauan* |
| 2nd | *duusraa* | 25 | *paččiis* | 53 | *tirpan* |
| 2½ | *aʀhaaii* | 26 | *čhabbis* | 54 | *čaauan* |
| 3 | *tiin* | 27 | *sattaais* | 55 | *pačpan* |
| 3rd | *tiisraa* | 28 | *aтhaais* | 56 | *čhappan* |
| 4 | *čaar* | 29 | *untiis* | 57 | *sataauan* |
| 4th | *čaulhaa* | 30 | *tiis* | 58 | *aтhaauan* |
| 5 | *pããč* | 31 | *iktiis* | 59 | *unsaтh* |
| 5th | *pããčuãã* | 32 | *battiis* | 60 | *saaтh* |
| 6 | *čhai* | 33 | *tẽẽtiis* | 61 | *iksaтh* |
| 6th | *čhaтaa* or *čhaтuãã* | 34 | *čãũtiis* | 62 | *baasaтh* |
| 7 | *saat* | 35 | *pãĩtiis* | 63 | *tirsaтh* |
| 8 | *aaтh* | 36 | *čhattiis* | 64 | *čausaтh* |
| 9 | *nau* | 37 | *sãĩtiis* | 65 | *pãĩsaтh* |
| 10 | *das* | 38 | *aʀtiis* | 66 | *čhããčhaтh* |
| 11 | *giaaraa* | 39 | *unčaalis* | 67 | *sarsaтh* |
| 12 | *baaraa* | 40 | *čaalis* | 68 | *arsaтh* |
| 13 | *teeraa* | 41 | *iktaaliis* | 69 | *unhattar* |
| 14 | *čaudaa* | 42 | *baiaaliis* | 70 | *sattar* |
| 15 | *pandraa* | 43 | *teetaaliis* | 71 | *ikhattar* |
| 16 | *soolaa* | 44 | *čauaaliis* | 72 | *bahattar* |
| 17 | *saltraa* | 45 | *pãĩtaaliis* | 73 | *tehattar* |
| 18 | *aтhaaraa* | 46 | *čhaiaaliis* | 74 | *čauhattar* |
| 19 | *unaiis* | 47 | *sãĩtaaliis* | 75 | *pačhattar* |
| 20 | *biis* | 48 | *aʀtaaliis* | 76 | *čhiattar* |
| 21 | *ikaais* | 49 | *unčaas* | 77 | *sathattar* |
| 22 | *baais* | 50 | *pačaas* | 78 | *aтhattar* |
| 23 | *teeis* | 51 | *ikkiaauan* | 79 | *uniaasii* |



Digitized by Google

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 80 | *assii* | 88 | *aTHaasii* | 96 | *čhaiaanuee* |
| 81 | *ikkiaasii* | 89 | *nauaasii* | 97 | *sattaanuee* |
| 82 | *baiaasii* | 90 | *nabbee* | 98 | *aTHaanuee* |
| 83 | *teeraasii* | 91 | *ikkiaanuee* | 99 | *niniiaanuee* |
| 84 | *čauraasii* | 92 | *baanuee* | 100 | *sau* |
| 85 | *pačaasii* | 93 | *teeraanuee* | 1000 | *hazaar* |
| 86 | *čheeaasii* | 94 | *čauraanuee* | 100,000 | *laakh* |
| 87 | *sattaasii* | 95 | *pačaanuee* | 10,000,000 | *karooR* |

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google